

INDEX

Figures in italics indicate a main entry

- Ābān/Water, deity, 804
 Abarsām, 379–80
 Abarshahr, province, 24–6, 705, 725, 730, 768, 970
 formerly Parthava, 767
 Abarshahr/Nēv-Shāpūr, a Sasanian foundation, 768
abaxt, legal use of, 655
 Abba b. Abba, 918
 ‘Abbāsids, dynasty and empire, 177, 334, 861, 948, 988
 imperial court of Baghdad, 177
 revolt of Bābak al-Khurramī, 1005, 1022–3
 Abbas Isaias, 1227
 Abdā, Bishop, 941 and n.1
 Abdagases, Parthian commander-in-chief, 71, 73
 Indo-Parthian ruler, 197
 Abdākāyā, assistant of Addai, 970
 ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Shubh, 259
 Aberkios, bishop of Hieropolis, 927
 Vita of, 927
 Abgar, ruler of Edessa, 53
 “Ariamnes”, 53
 Abgar V/Akbar Ukhāmā, 926
 Abgar VII, of Adiabene and Osroene, 925
 Abgar VIII, the Great, 926
 Abgar IX, Severus, 926 n. 8
 Abgars, rulers of Edessa, 77, 595, 715
 court procedure and titles, 709, 712, 721
 ābgēnagin, defined, 445
 Abbira, 729
 ‘Abid b. al-Abras, poet, 609
 Āb-i-Diz/Coprates, 306, 754
 Abinerglos/Ādinerglos, 312–13
 Abivard, 26, 39
 Abkhazia, 520
 Abnā, descendants of the Persians in the Yemen, 607
 Abraha, Ethiopian general, 157
 ruler of South Arabia, 605–6
 Abraham the Great, of Kāshghar, 945
 Abrēnag, 729
 Abū ‘Abd-Allāh Muhammad b. Yūsuf al-Khwārazmī, mathematician, 1245
 Abū ‘Amra Kaisān, lieutenant of Mukhtār, 1002
 Abū Bakr, 487–8
 Abū l-Baqā’, 599
 Abū ‘Isā Hārūn al-Warrāq, 994
 Abū Ja‘far, 1008
 Abū l-Ma‘ālī Muḥammad
 Bayān al-adyān, 1004
 Abū Manṣūr ‘Abd al-Razzāq Tūsī, 360
 Abū Ma‘shar of Balkh, astronomer, 383
 Abū Murra, 606
 Abū Muslim, 991, 1008, 1010, 1022
 Mazdakite leader, 1003
 in Neo-Mazdakism, 1011
 imām, 1013–14
 Abūmuslimiyā, Mazdakites, 1002 n. 3, 1004, 1010, 1014
 Abū Nu‘aim
 Dhikr akhbār Isbahān, 1270, 1281
 Abū l-Qāsim Mahmūd b. ‘Umar al-Zamakhshari, author of the *Muqaddimat al-adab*, 1246
 Abū Sa‘id al-Jannābī, Bāṭīni activist, 1015, 1024
 Abū Ya‘qūb Sijistānī, 1016
 aḥyātikār, of Veh-Shāpūr, 629
 Abzākyā, follower of Mānī, 971
 Acesilene/Ashtishat, 534
 Achaemenes, 117, 389
 Achaemenian dynasty and empire, 5, 16, 26, 36, 39, 113, 116, 280, 299, 322, 470, 660, 698, 737, 1157, 1180, 1187, 1244
 royal authority, 7, 695 and n. 4
 in Asia Minor, 100–6
 religion, 100–1, 827, 829, 831
 title of the royal heir, 109
 in Pontus, 111
 and the Sasanians, 120, 568
 empire, 120, 169, 173, 181, 388; rulers of Armenia and Georgia, 506, 508
 taxation, 154
 and eastern Iranians, 181, 821
 army, 181; Arab cavalry, 593
 influence on nomad art, 194
 trade with India, 312; China, 548
 coinage, 329
 inscriptions and tablets, 360
 absent from traditional history, 366, 389–90
 in Zoroastrian tradition, 439

INDEX

- Achaemenian dynasty and empire (*cont.*)
 in Mesopotamia, 481–2, 492, 497
 four residences of, 482
 written languages, 494, 1251–3
 and the Arabs, 593
 time-reckoning, 778–80, 784–5, 788–9
 and the *xvarənah*, 825
 and Gandhāra, 949
 Sogdiana a satrapy, 1216
see also art
- Achaia, 823
 Achaichala, 1269
 Acilisene (modern Ekeleac), 109
Acta Archelai, *see* Theodor bar Kōnai
 Actium, 65
 Acts of the Martyrs, 133, 930, 936, 939, 946,
 970, 1277
 silk-weaving in, 1108
 “Acts of Pusai”, 886
 “Acts of St Thomas”, 1161, 1264
see also poetry: “Song of the Pearl”
- adab*, 611
- Adam, *see* Gēhmurd
- Addai/Addaeus, Christian teacher, 925–6,
 969–70
Doctrina Addai, 721, 926, 1264
- ādīhik*, defined, 634
- Aden, 158
- Ādhār, 830
- Adhiṣṭhana, 1239
- Ādhurbād, *see* Āturpāt
- Ādhur Gushnasp, 121, 763
- Ādhurnarseh, son of Hormizd II, 132
- ādhwā’, 604
- Adiabene, 76, 83, 88, 118, 126, 701, 705,
 729–30, 838, 858
 refuge for Artabanus III, 75, 728
- Ḩodayab/Norširakān, also Assyria, 89
- Sasanian buffer state, 139
- centre of Christianity, 140, 924–32 *passim*
- as cultural bridge, 496
- part of Roman Assyria, 496
- acquires Nisibis, 728
- dynasty converted to Judaism, 912, 925
- ‘Adi b. Zaid al-‘Ibādī, Christian Arab poet,
 598, 608
- administration, 681–746 *passim*
- Seleucid state, 8
- Sasanian bureaucracy, 148
- reforms of Khusrav I, 153–4
- Sasanian military administration, 588
- of social estates, 633
- access to appointments, 645
- of Sasanian royal lands, 660, 733–4
- endowments secretariat, 664
- registration of agreements, 670
- of justice, 676–9
- composition of the king’s council, 689–
 708
- court officials, 709–13
- of the Seleucid polis, 714; Parthian, 715–
 22 *passim*
- of Sasanian royal cities and their districts,
 723–7
- Seleucid and Parthian administrative
 divisions, 725–6; Sasanian, 729–32
- of Parthian kingdoms, 726–9
- of late-Sasanian districts, 732–4; state and
 temple departments, 733
- summary of developments, 734–5
- state officials, 735–8
- of trade, 738–44 *passim*
- of taxation, 744–6
- of controls on craftsmen, 1126
- Adonis, 468
- adoption 117, 151, 578–9, 643
- agnatic groups and adrogation, 644
- fostering of the king’s son, 702–3
- arya, adopted, of Bahrām II, 883
- institution of “fosterer”, 1268, 1276,
 1278
- Adoptionists, 536 n. 2
- Adrapana, 767
- Adulis, 187
- Ādurbād, *see* Āturpāt
- Ādurbādagān, *see* Āzarbājān
- Advenak namak i Nipesišnih, 1187
- ādvēnak i xvēsh, ādvēnak i daš, real rights,
 658
- advēnpat, “master of rites”, 882
- Adzhina Tepe, 960
- Āešma, 347
- Afghanistan, Afghans, 26, 36, 446, 508, 1046
- Bactrian Greek settlements, 188
- capitals of the Zābulite kings, 214
- and Buddhism, 956–7
- Afqūr Shāh/Pakores, Arsacid king, 475
- Afrāh-rōdh/Marāgha, other possible names
 for Phraata, 63–4, 763
- Afranius
- dislodges Phraates III, 47
- Afrāsiyāb / Fraŋrasyan / Frāsyāv / Firāsyāt /
 Farāsiyāb, 356, 389, 398–414 *passim*, 434,
 436, 460–7 *passim*
- and xvarənah, 345
- invades Ērānshahr, 367
- Irano-Turanian feuds, 373–6, 452, 457–8,
 459
- chronology, 383, 385
- as “national enemy”, 396
- king of the Turks, 409
- kills Naudhar, 435

INDEX

- Afrāsiyāb (*cont.*)
 versions of name of, 440
 house of, 440–3
 and drought, 442
 murder of Siyāvush, 448, 450, 451
 Afrāsiyāb Maracanda, northern Samarkand,
 237, 244, 613, 960
 wall-paintings, 1089, 1110
- Afrēm
 “Book of the Laws of Countries”, 927
- Āfrīgh, era of, 255
- āfrinagān, 796, 1171
- Afrin i Zardusht*, 448, 466
- Afshin*, 444
- Afzōn-Ārtāšir, the royal fire-temple of, 640
- Afzūn-Xwatāy fire, 891
- Agapet of Bēt Lāpāt, 931
- Agathocleia, Indo-Bactrian queen, 191
- Agathocles, Euthydemid king, 189–90
 coinage, 240
- Aghrērath / Aghraēratha, brother of Afrāsiyāb, 373, 415, 442
- Agmatama, *see* Ecbatana
- agnatic groups, 402 641–6, 670, 694, 740
 and freed slaves, 640
 noble, 645–6, 698–708 *passim*
 and marriage, 646–50 *passim*
 and guardianship, 650–5 *passim*
 and alienation of property, 658, 667 and
 n. 2
- Agni/Fire, 444
- Agniveśa, herbal pharmacopoeia of, 207
- agoranomos, market supervisor, 919
- agriculture, 11, 13, 82, 121, 306, 398, 635,
 747–77 *passim*
 policy under the Sasanians, 131–2, 160
 in Transoxiana, 248, 250
 in Arabia, 604
 in Pārs, 752
 in Khūzistān, 753–4
 in Mēshān, 755
 in Babylonia/Asūristān, 760
see also irrigation
- Agrippa, Iberian dignitary, 515
- Ahai, Babylonian rabbi, 918
- Ahar, 64
- Ahar Chai river, 64
- ‘ahd, charter, 460
- Ahiqar
 tale, 497
 “Wisdom of Ahiqar”, 1180
- Ahriman/Angra Mainyu, 695, 823, 829, 1190
 in common beliefs about creation, 347–58
 passim
 in traditional history and myth, 365–448
 passim
- and the Peacock-angel, 501
- and Sada and Mihrāgan, 800–2,
 in Mazdean heresy and orthodoxy, 898–
 901, 938–9
- in Māni’s system, 973–83 *passim*
- in the *Bundahishn*, 1192
- Ahrmēn, Manichaeon Prince of Darkness, 975
- Ahunavayrō/Ahunvar, prayer, 354, 1173,
 1178, 1192
- abura, *see* asura
- Ahurā Mazdā/Ohrmazd, 7, 18, 100–1, 106,
 113, 134, 302–3, 325, 327, 365–70
 passim, 424, 429–30, 438, 451, 470, 557,
 696, 846, 876, 880, 938–9, 1028, 1178,
 1186, 1190
 in Iranian common beliefs, 343–58 *passim*
 and nationalism, 408–9
 and Gayōmard, 416–18, 420
 and Zoroaster, 431
 equivalents; Bel, 532; Aramzi, 534;
 Aramazd, 534; compounded with Zeus,
 535, 825; Heaven-God of the Hu? 554
 in Ardashir I’s investiture relief, 695, 864
 and the gābāmbārs, 795, 807
 and the Mihragān festival, 802
 as day and month names, 804
 in India, 851
 in Manichaeism and Zoroastrianism, 859–
 60; in Zurvanism, 886
- Zurvanite and Mazdean ideas concerning,
 899–901
- Zoroastrian major deity, 902
- Urmaysde, 902
- in Māni’s system, 973–80 *passim*
- fight with Ahriman, 1191–2
- Ahvāz, 306, 310, 603, 724
 a Mazdakite area, 1001
- Ai Khānum, 188, 822, 866, 1040, 1257
 excavated, 1032–5; plan, 1034; herm,
 1037; column bases, 1047; brick arches,
 1052
- Alexandria Oxiana? 1142
- Ailānis/Airānis, 434
- Ā’īn-nāma, Tāj-nāma, 363–4, 393, 710
- Aion, 830, 843, 855
- Aīrtam frieze, from Tirmidh, 956, 1142
- Airyaman/Aryaman, 357, 829, 977, 984 and
 n. 2
- Manichaeon epithet for Jesus, 1198–9
- Airyānōm Vaējah/Ērān Vēj, Avestan home-
 land, 351, 408
- Chorasmia? 352, 438–9, 1244
- “Gōpat”, 442
- Māni’s Aryān Vēžan, 1199
- Airyānōm Xvarənab, 408
- Airyāva, 433

INDEX

- aiwān*, 489, 495, 1085, 1147, 1149
 defined, 162
 an innovation in architecture, 1049
 in Sasanian palaces, 1058–70 *passim*
- Aivān-i Karkhā, Sasanian palace, 1067–8
 fig. 5, 1088
- Aiyria/Aryans or Iranians, 409
- Ajantā
 murals, 557
 grottoes, 953
- ajasa/ayasa, defined, 196
- Ajina-tepe, Buddhist monastery, 1145
- Ājīvikaś, 953
- Akanfaciya/Kōfich, tribe, 772
- Ak-Beshim, 960
- Akes, river, 438
- Akhārūn, 260
- Akkhbāt al-fiwāl*, *see* Dinawarī
- Akhshunwār, 214
- akhtar-shumārān*, astrologers, 394
- akinakes, sword, 538
- Akkadians, 1078
- Aksaray (ancient Archelais), 110
- Aksu, 543
- Akvān, 349
- al-‘Alā’ b. ‘Abd-Allāh al-Hādramī, 608
- alae Parthorum, 561
- Alans, an Iranian people of south Russia, 86, 526, 731, 763, 765, 852
- Alans, Gates of the, 730, 731
 Caucasus/Iberian/Alan Gates, 764
- Alarodians, Greek name for the Urartians, 506
- Albania, 141, 147, 519, 730
 Hulwān/Albania, 759
 Ar(r)ān/Ardān/Albania, 765
- Albinus, Clodius, Roman general, 94
 rebellion in Gaul, 94
- Alburz, 444–5, 453, 730, 1242
 Pareshahvar/Alburz, 730
see also Harā
- alchemy, 553
 and the Magians, 830
- Alexander, son of Mark Anthony and Cleopatra, 65
- Alexander of Abonuteichos, 839
- Alexander Balas, 33–4, 281, 307, 685
- Alexander the Great, 10, 17, 113, 299, 310, 591, 593, 615, 757, 821, 831, 842
 his generals divide the empire, 4
 in Asia Minor, 106–7
 campaigns in Bactria and Sogdiana, 182–3; Greek soldier settlements, 183
 marries Iranian Roxana, 183, 236
 death at Babylon, 185
 in Transoxiana, 235, 238
- coinage, 301
 in Iranian traditional history, 361, 363, 377–8, 379, 395, 398, 405, 409, 410, 472–4; chronology, 386–7
- and Mesopotamia, 481, 482, 487
 and Hellenism in Iranian territories, 492, 508
- in Armenia, 506, 508
- in Georgia, 506, 514
- founder of cities, 822
- and deification, 824, 873
- in northern India, 949
- effect of conquest on Iranian art, 1028
- Sogdians forced eastwards, 1216
- Alexander, Julius, Roman general, 91
- Alexander of Lykopolis, 973, 986
- Alexander of Ouranopolis, 873 n. 3
- Alexandreschate/Khujand/Leninabad, 822
- Alexandria, 131, 361
 fall in the Persian invasion of Egypt, 169
 glassware trade to China, 198
 School of, 943
- Alexandria, near Bela, possible names for, 777
- Alexandria/Lan-shih/Bactra, *see* Balkh
- Alexandria in Arachosia/Alexandropolis/Kandahār/Qandahār, 182, 774–5, 822, 950
- Alexandria-amongst-the-Arians, *see* Herāt
- Alexandria of the Caucasus, city founded by Alexander the Great, 182
- Alexandria Eschata, 237
- Alexandria-Kapisa, twin town, 847
- Alexandria in Margiana, *see* Marv
- Alexandria-on-the-Oxus, 237
- Alexandria, on the Pasitigris, *see* Charax Spasino
- Alexandria-Propthasia, garrison centre founded by Alexander the Great, 182
- Alf lail wa laila*, 1168
- Allat, Arab goddess, 532
- allotments of land, 588, 631–2
 and military service, 8, 660
 for equipping a horseman, 700, 734
- A-lo-Pen, Persian monk, 274, 947
- Amanus Gates, 57
- Amarāvatī/Dhānyakaṭaka, 208
- Amardi/Mardi, 766–7
- Amariace, 766
- Amasia, region in Pontus, 107, 111
- amaṛya, defined, 426
- ‘Amat al-Fil, 606
- Amazasp, King of Iberia, 126, 708
- Amazaspes/Hamazasp II, of Iberia, 520
- Amazons, 238
- Amenhotep/Akhenaten IV, 412

INDEX

- Amerātāt, 346, 557
 Amaša Spēntas / Amahraspands / Amasha-spands/Holy Immortals, 346, 368, 395, 467, 557, 829, 859, 902, 975–6
 in Iranian common beliefs, 346–58 *passim*
 and Zoroastrian festivals, 793–800 *passim*
 and Zoroaster, 1173
 Amida/Diyārbakr, 137, 151, 168, 569, 752
 besieged by Shāpūr II, 210
 weavers, 1107
 ‘Āmir b. Ša’sa’ā, 606
 Amisos, 107
 Ammon oasis, 873
 Amorites, 487
 ‘Amr, king of the Apgarids, 130
 ‘Amr, king of the Lakhmids, 130, 488 n. 1
 ‘Amr b. ‘Adī, king of the Abgar regions, 885
 ‘Amr b. Hind, 607
 ‘Amr b. Iṭnāba al-Khazraji, of Medina, 601
 ‘Amr b. Kulthūm, poet, 609
 ‘Amr b. al-Mundhir III, governor over Ma‘add, 606
 Amū Daryā river, *see* Oxus
 Āmul/Chahār Jū, 252, 258, 457, 738
 Amurdād, 355, 792, 795
 Amyzon, 105
 An/Bukhārā, 615
 Anāhitā/Anaitis, *see* Arədvī Sūrā
 Anaitis, Tmolian goddess, 100, 107
 Anaitis Barzochora, goddess, 110
 Ananias Sirakac'i, 573, 576
 Anastasius I, Byzantine emperor, 323
 ‘Anatha, 1269
 Anatolia 43, 44, 57, 141, 365, 412, 481, 532
 Sasanian–Byzantine conflict, 168–9
 occupation by Persians, 174
 geographical barrier to, 505
 Hellenism in, 508
 Anatolius, Byzantine commander, 146
 Anbār, *see* Massice
 An-ch’eng, 271
 Andarimān / Vandarəmaini / Vandarīman, 413–14
 andarz/wisdom literature, *see* literature
 Andarz i Pōryōtkēšān, 1181
 andarz-pat i vāspubrakān, official of the king’s personal demesne, 669
 Āndhra, 953
 Andigān, 703
 Andigāns, noble clan, 705
 Andragoras, Seleucid satrap of Parthia and Hyrcania, 6 and n. 3, 28
 bid for independence, 28–9, 186–7
 revolt of the Parni, 29
 crushed by Arsaces, 31
 coinage, 187
 Andromachus
 Parthian sympathizer, 55
 Anēr/Ariacae, of Parishkhwār, 766
 Angra Mainyu, *see* Ahriaman
 An-hsi, Chinese name for Parthia, 542
 Anilaeus, Jewish apprentice of Nehardeā, 69, 71–2
 governorship conferred on him, 71
 marries a gentile, 72
 death, 72
 leads a revolt, 911–2
 Anirān, *see* non-Iran
 An Lu-shan, 274
 and T’ang dynasty, 274
 Sogdian father? 553
 Uighur help against, 620
 Annubanini, king of the Lullubi, 1078, 1082
 anōś, 357
 anšabrik, defined, 635, 929 n. 7
 Anshan, mountains of, 485, 784
 Antialcidas, Indo-Bactrian king, 190
 Antigonea
 ambush of Pacorus by Cassius, 56
 campaign of Carrhae, 56
 Antigonus, ruler of Asia Minor, 4
 against Eumenes, 96, 185
 victory near Iṣfahān, 185
 Antigonus, nephew of Hyrcanus, 57
 advances on Jerusalem, 57
 King of Judea, 57
 executed by Mark Antony, 58
 Antigonus the One-eyed, father of Demetrius Poliorcetes, 824
 Antimachus I, Bactrian Greek king, 189
 coinage, 240, 685, 847
 Antinoë, silks, 1109, 1111–12
 Antioch, 6, 12, 32, 34, 36, 58, 74, 120, 152, 168, 731, 823, 1108 n. 2
 new capital of Seleucus, 4–5, 509
 Parthian Pacorus raids, 56
 Trajan in, 89
 captured by Shāpūr I, 125; Khusrau I, 155; Khusrau Parvēz, 523
 resettlement of inhabitants, 139, 486, 929
 School of, 943
 mosaics, 1127 and n. 1
 Antioch, on the Tigris, 823
 Antioch, on the Tornadotos, 823
 Antiochia/’nytwb̄kyn, province, 706
 Antiochia, *see* Spasīnou Charax
 Antiochia-Khusrau, Ctesiphon, palace in, 710
 Antiochia-in-Margiana, *see* Marv
 Antiochia in Persis, 713, 823
 Antiochia in Scythia, 237, 823
 Antiochia Tarmata, 237

INDEX

- Antiochis, wife of Xerxes, king of Armenia, 512
 Antiochus I Soter, Seleucid king, son of Seleucus I, 5, 17, 279, 299, 378, 483, 492, 824
 and the nomads, 5
 in Bactria, 186
 coinage, 233, 235, 245, 302
 co-ruler of the eastern satrapies, 237
 defeat at Magnesia, 281
 Antiochus II Theos, 5, 28, 186
 loss of the eastern satrapies, 237
 Antiochus III, the Great, 106, 279, 302, 310, 482, 871
 campaigns in east and west, 6
 battle against Molon, 7
 against the Gerrhaens, 11
 eastern campaign, 29, 187–9, 279
 opposed by Artabanus I, 31
 treaty with Euthydemus, 188, 241
 battle of Magnesia, 303, 306
 and Armenia, 510–12
 and the Arabs, 593–4
 consolidation of the dynastic cult, 824
 and Babylonian Jews, 910
 Antiochus IV Epiphanes, 32 and n. 4, 40, 487, 594, 685, 873
 military operations in the east, 32, 189
 ritual marriage to Artemis, 32
 death at Tabae, 32 and n. 6, 483
 reconquest of Bactria, 189
 Antiochus V Eupator, 34, 562
 Antiochus VI, son of Alexander Balas, 34
 Antiochus VII Sidetes, 283
 death and end of Seleucid Iran, 6–7
 marries Cleopatra, 36
 overcomes Tryphon the usurper, 37
 defeats the Parthians, 37
 burial, 38
 Antiochus VIII Grypus, 841
 Antiochus I of Commagene, 81, 110, 113
 fusion of Persian and Greek traditions, 113
 and the Orontids, 507
 instigator of the ruler cult, 841–3
 see also Nimrûd Dâgh
 Antiochus III of Commagene, 106
 Antiochus, philosopher, 95
 Antipater, 236, 509
Antirrheticus of Euagrius Ponticus, 1226
 Antonines, 93
 Antoninus, at Shâpûr II's court, 707
 Antoninus Pius, 552
 Antony, Mark, Roman general, 57, 64, 66, 80, 516
 campaign in Atropatene/Azarbâijân, 58–
- 66; geography of campaign, 63–4;
 battle at Phraata, 59–60; army 59–64;
 Marsus/Margus, 62
 death in Egypt, 65
 coinage, 292
 Anzaze, consort of Kamniskeres II, 307
Aogemadaētā, 415, 420, 440, 1176
 Aorsi kingdom, 768
apadāna, 1058
 see also *aivān*
 Apadana at Persepolis, 105
apākhtar, the north “side”, 732
āpām, loan contract, 673 and n. 1
 Apame, Iranian wife of Seleucus I, 4, 186, 825
 Apamea, 36, 106
 Roman civil war, 56
 taken by Pacorus, 57
 Peace of, 513
 Apamea in Mesene, 823
 Apamea in the Sitakene/Apolloniatis, 823
 Apam Nâpât, yazad of the waters, 345, 465
 Apaoša, 348
 Aparak/Aparag, 629, 1171, 1177
aparik, the “remainder” of the fire, 905
aparmānd, system of succession, 652
i pat xv̄ētīb, 652
i pat stūrīb, 653
aparmānd i pitarān, inherited property, 665–9
 Aparni, see Parni
 Apasai, the scribe, 682
 Apavarcticene, 26
 Apellen/Apelles, Father, 1227
 Apgarids, Arab tribe, 130
 Aphrahah, Church Father, 921, 940
 Aphrodite, 468, 488, 534, 824, 1037
 apocalyptic ideas, 825, 833, 834–6, 981–2
 in Pahlavi writings, 1194–5
 Apodakos, Characenean prince, 311
 Apollo, 113, 237, 281–2, 307, 310, 428, 532, 686, 824, 849, 1030
 temple at Phasis/Poti, 533
 at Nimrûd Dâgh, 535, 842
 of Didyma, 823
 the Archeget of the Seleucids, 825
 Apollodorus of Artemita, 4 n. 1, n. 2
 Apollodotus I, Indo-Greek ruler in Bactria, 189
 Apollodotus II, 194
 regains control of Taxila, 196
 Apollodotus, brother of Demetrius I of Bactria, 952
 Apolloniatis/Apamea in the Sitakene, 823
 Apollonius of Tyana, 718, 839, 849, 996 n. 2
 Apollophanes, Greek king of Bactria, 194

INDEX

- Apologos, *see* Ubulla
Apophthegmata Patrum, 1226
 apricots, 565–6
 ‘Aqiba, 918
 Aqsu, 269, 961
 Āq-Tepe, bullae found at, 742
aqyāl, 604
 Ārā, inscription, 206
 evidence for a second Kanishka, 207
 ‘Arabāyā, satrapy of, 593
 Arabia, 89, 136, 426, 730, 756, 831
 smallpox epidemic, 93
 tribal kingdom of Kinda, 152, 601–2
 southern Arabia, 156–7, 604–7; Sasanian dependency, 158
 and Iran, 593–604 *passim*
 agriculture, 604
 Sasanian cultural influence, 609–12
 Arabistān/Northern Mesopotamia, 89
 Sasanian buffer state, 139
 ‘arabiyya, 610
 Arabs, 89, 91, 138, 154, 410, 561, 754–6
 Lakhmid Hira a Sasanian buffer state, 139,
 166, 596–602
 against Kavād I, 150
 the Kindī Arabs, 152, 601–2
 Arab-Byzantine non-intervention, 158
 against the Byzantines, 158
 raiding Iraq, 163, 167, 484–5
 Arab-Persian hostilities, 166, 172
 expansion of Islam, 167, 172–3
 conquest of Iran, 172, 175, 323, 331–5;
 terms of peace, 175; effect on the Persian language, 495; on law, 680
 Qādisiyya, battle, 172, 486
 in Mesopotamia, 173, 487, 760; conquest, 486
 Arab-Transoxiana hostilities, 256, 259
 Nabatean, 312
 and the myth of Dahāk, 426
 and Bahrām V, Gōr, 485
 Arabic borrowings from Iranian languages, 496, 502–3, 610–11
 conquest of Armenia and Georgia, 524
 Sasanian appeal to China against, 547
 Roman and Byzantine frontier auxiliaries, 593
 and Iran, 593–612; Characene, 594;
 Hatra, 594–6; Hira, 596–602, 757;
 Shāpū II, 603; ‘Umān, 603–4; South Arabia, 604–9; culture, 609–12
 architecture, 611–12
 at the Abgar court, 709
 invasion of Khūzistān, 754
 settle in Harmozia, 772
 named tāčik in Iran, 1241
- Arachosia, province of eastern Iran, 186,
 216, 310, 439, 455, 774
 controlled by the Mauryas, 186
 Saka invasion of Bactria, 193
 mint, 194
 see also Zābul
 Aramaeans, 72–3, 91, 447, 487
 Aramat, 829
 Aramazd, Armenian god, 534
 Aramé, founder of the Urartian kingdom, 512
 Ararat, mountain, 506
 Araxes river, 46, 59, 80, 82, 163
 Arbāyistān province, 754, 761
 Arbela/Irbil, 760–1, 932
 base of Phraates III, 47
 citadel of, 77
 captured by Romans, 95
 battle of Arbela/Gaugamela, 107, 182, 508
 episcopal see, 499
 “Arbela, Chronicle of”, 118, 125, 882, 935
 source value assessed, 92, 925–6, 1276
 attributed to Mšiha Zkha, 92
 a non-existent Aršak, 1269
 Arbies, tribe, 777
 Arcadius, Byzantine emperor, 143, 578
 Archebios, predecessor of first Indo-Scythian ruler, 191, 848
 Archedemus, disciple of Diogenes of Babylon, 826
 architecture, 12, 15, 16, 491, 508
 Achaemenian tower temples, 16, 506
 Iranian influence on Armenian and Georgian, 532–3 fig. 2; Chinese, 556;
 Byzantine, 582; Arab, 611–12
 stūpas, Aśokan style, 951
 Indian Buddhist rock-hewn, 953
 Græco-Macedonian in Iranian countries, 1032–5
 Parthian period, 1037–47 *passim*; Mesopotamian innovations, 1049–50; eastern provinces, 1052
 Sasanian, 1056–76; palaces, 1058–73; the squared, domed hall, 1058–9; vaulting, 1067; religious buildings, 1074–6
 map of Sasanian sites, 1059
 in Khwārazm, 1135–9 *passim*
 in Transoxiana, 1142, 1144–5
 see also aivān, stucco decoration
 archons, 741
 Ardabil, 763
 Ardashir / Artaxerxes I / Ardashir Pāpagān,
 first Sasanian King of Kings, 132, 306,
 314, 428, 473, 689, 696, 701–2, 708, 713,
 727, 729, 736, 754, 1055, 1058–62, 1208
 slays Ardavān V, 96, 203

INDEX

- Ardashir (*cont.*)
 coinage, 116, 122, 298, 302, 305, 324–9,
 875; as art, 1055–6
 lineage, 117–18, 1187 and n. 1
 expansion of his kingdom, 118, 121, 597
 coalition reign with Shāpūr, 119
 Parthian noble families join his court, 120
 against the Romans, 124, 518–19
 ruler of the Kushān empire as far as
 Peshawar, 203
 slaying of the dragon Haftvād, 348
 in traditional history and legend, 378–80,
 381–404 *passim*, 471, 473–4; chrono-
 logy, 386–7 and n. 1
 testament on government, 379, 888–9,
 1183
 Cyrus legend and, 389
 Mās‘ūdi’s description, 392
 as culture hero, 405
 and nationalism, 409–10
 in Tabari, 476–7
 and Mesopotamia, 484–5
 and Characene, 594
 “investiture” reliefs, 695, 864, 1079–80
 and n. 3, 1080–1
 rise to honour of clans and kings under,
 705–6
 founder of cities, 723, 725, 757, 758, 760,
 769, 773–4
 and Gōr, 751
 religion under, 875–7, 933, 935
 deification of, 876
 Firuzabād rock-sculpture, 1078–9
 in the “Letter of Tansar”, 1184
 in the *Kārnāmag i Ardashir*, 1187–8
 Ardashir II, successor to Shāpūr II, 140, 693
 lineage, 141, 388
 Tāq-i Bustān rock-relief, 1087
 Ardashir III, son of Kavad II, 170
 Ardashir I Kūshānshāh, 209
 Ardashir II Kūshānshāh, 209
 Ardashir, king of Adiabene, 126, 133, 708
 Ardashūr, king of Kirmān, son of Ardashir
 I, 120, 126, 708, 729
 Ardashir, son of Shirōy, 404
 Ardashir-Khwarra, *see* Firuzabād
ardāv/vičidag/vižidag, a category of the
 Manichaean elect, 986
 Ardavān, Parthian prince and disciple of
 Māni, 970
 Ardavān, *see* Artabanus
 Arda-Vīrāz-nāmag, 1160
ardāyih/ardāvīt, Manichaean use of the term,
 986
 Ardvahišt/Ašavahišta, 355
 and the Nō Rōz festival, 797–800, 804
 Arədvi Sūrā / Anāhitā / Anāhid / Anaitis /
 Nanaia/Nāhīd, goddess of the waters,
 109, 306–7, 323, 328, 344, 464, 526, 532,
 694, 716, 830, 873–4, 880, 1120
 Nanaia/Anahita/Artemis, 32 n. 4, 866
 worshipped throughout the Achaemenian
 empire, 100–1
 Stakhr temple (Anāhid-ardashir) 118, 121,
 378, 706, 751
 as mythical river, 352
 sacrifices to, worshippers of, 413–66
passim
 patron of Armenia, 534
 Ardvīsūr Anāhid, 804
 equivalents of, 823
 aspects of, 845–6
 in Bactria, 847
 and taurobolia, 855
 temple at Ecbatana, 871
 Stakhr priesthood retained by Sasanian
 kings, 875; given to Kartir, 882; re-
 covered by Narsēh? 884
 fate of the cult under Ardashir II and his
 successors, 888, 891, 897, 902
 a major Zoroastrian deity, 903
 at Tāq-i Bustān, 1087
 depicted on seals, 1100
see also Artemis
 Arcia, *see* Herāt
 Arjataspa, *see* Arjāsp
 Arōnavak, wife of Dahāk, 415, 427
 Ares, 113, 534, 535
 Arethas, *see* al-Hārith b. ‘Amr
 Arəzō svamasa, 430
 Argān/Arrajān, 752
 Argandene, 842
 Argonauts, 514, 524
 Ariamnes, Arab chief, also known as
 Acbar/Abgar
 suspect guide to Crassus before Carrhae,
 53
 Ariana, 747
 Arianism, 143–4
 Ariaramnes, ruler of Cappadocia, 111
 Ariarathes, ruler of Cappadocia, 111
 Ariarathes V Philhellene, 112
 Ariermannes, son of Bagadates, 105
 Arish, *see* Kai Ārish
 Aristobolus
 campaign of Carrhae, 56
 suppressed by Cassius, 56
 Arius, of Alexandria, 143
 Arius/Hari Rūd river, 187–8
 Arjāsp/Arjataspa, legendary Turanian
 leader, 367, 411, 413–14, 437, 441, 471,
 1167
 invasion of Iran, 376

INDEX

- Arjāsp (*cont.*)
 the “Chionite”, 403; king of the Chionites, 467
 and Gushtāsp, 466–7
- arkapati*, 713
- Armaiti, 829
- Armavir, 17, 512, 534
- Armazi, 515, 520
 gravestone, 1151, 1161, 1262
- Armazi, Georgian god, 534
- Armenia, 77, 127, 162, 382, 390, 456, 477, 482, 485–6, 477, 569, 660, 701–2, 728–31, 736–7, 765–6, 789, 827, 891, 915
 invasion of Lucullus, 45–6; Pompey, 47
- Arsacid dynastic link, 56, 142
 head of Crassus exhibited, 56, 517
 ally of Mark Antony, 59
 invasion of Mark Antony, 64–5
 Parthian control, 65
 and Vonones, 69
 intrigues of Tiberius, 73
 continuing Roman–Parthian conflict over, 79–87; condominium, 85; Roman army destroyed, 93
 survival of the Arsacid tradition in, 81, 97, 518
 annexation by Rome, 94, 114, 141–2
 gods and temples, 107, 109, 512, 534
 opposed to Ardashir, 120
 Sasanian–Roman conflict, 124, 125, 129–31, 138; Roman annexation, 141
 Kushān dynastic links, 142
 invasion by Huns, 142
 discontent under Bahram V, Gōr, 145–6
 revolt against Zoroastrianism, 146–7
 battle of Avarair, 147
 Vahan Mamikonian revolt, 148; peace settlement, 149
 rebellion under Kavād, 150
 Byzantine–Sasanian conflict, 155, 159–60, 168–9
 revolt against Suren, 159
 in the rebellion of Bahram Chōbin, 164
 contacts with Iran; political, 505–14, 516–20, 522–4; dress, 525; language, 514, 525–6; political and social organisation, 527–31; art and architecture, 532; religion, 518–19, 520–1, 531–2, 534–6; minstrels, 536
 nomad invasion route, 505
 kingdom of Urartu, 505–6
 the Orontid dynasty, 506–7; table, 507
 in inscriptions, 506 n. 2
 under the Achaemenians, 508
 Hellenism, 508–9, 517, 534
 Seleucid period, 510–14; Greater and Lesser Armenia, 510–13
- Artaxiad dynastic table, 513
 cultural consolidation, 514
 language, 514
 between Rome and Iran, 516–17
 throne reserved for Parthian royal heir, 517
- Armenian Arsacid dynastic table, 517–18
- enemy of Sasanian Iran, 518
 Christianity, 518, 520–1, 584, 586, 890; transportation, 753
- Shāpūr I's victory in, 519
 historical sources, 519–20; 627–8, 1266–7, 1274–6
 religion, 521, 531–2, 534–6
- Byzantine–Sasanian division and deportation, 522–3
 success of Heraclius in, 523
- Arab conquest, 524
 feudalism, 528–31 *passim*
 Arsacid court customs, 706–7, 709
 ethnic composition, 763
 Christianization of Iranian festivals, 804–5
 art still unknown, 1094
- Armenus, Thessalian, 524
- armour
 Parthian system copied, 561–2
- army
 of Alexander the Great, 8, 10; in eastern Iran, 183–5
 Seleucid, 8, 10; of Antiochus VII, 37–8
 Parthian; Saka mercenaries, 38; itinerant mint and treasury, 43; at Carrhae, 52–5; against Mark Antony, 60; technology and strategy, 561–3; “free men”, 700; units from local rulers, 728; the Parthian shot, 911; dancers and singing girls, 1158
 Roman; at Carrhae, 52–5; of Mark Antony in Iran, 58–60, 62–3; reforms, 137; technology and strategy, 561–3; Mithraism, 566, 833; Arab auxiliaries, 593
 Sasanian; reforms of Khusrav I, 154; destroyed by the Arabs, 172, 174; payment, 333; weapons, 580–1; Arab auxiliaries, 604; condemned men, 607; royal garrison cities, 723; royal bodyguard, 710; Jews in, 916, 1276 n. 5; size, 1282
 Byzantine, 169, 580–1; Persian mercenaries, 570; Arab auxiliaries, 593
 Achaemenian, 181, 182, 561 n. 4; Arab cavalry, 593
 primitive warfare, 402, 463–4
 of the Kartlosids, 514

INDEX

- army (*cont.*)
 Byzantine and Sasanian military organisation, 588–9
 of the Lakhmids, 599–600, 601
Armyāya/Amitāyus/Amida, 1239
Arnavāz, wife of Dahāk, 416
Arooaspō, on Kushān coins, 465
Arostom, 456
Arpoxais, 422
Arrhidaeus, Philip, half-brother of Alexander, 105
Arsaces/Arshak, throne/clan name of the Parthian kings, 30, 684, 687
Arsaces I, Arsacid king, founder of the Parthian empire
 historicity and chronology, 28–30, 686 and n.5, 687
 nomad followers the Parni, 28, 31, 187
 overthrows Andragoras, 187
 coinage, 279–80, 286
 coronation, 696
Arsaces II, 281, 686
Arsaces Theopator Euergetes, “King of the campaign coins”, 44
Arsacia, 767
Arsacid dynasty, 28–97
 local dynasts, 6
 Parni origins, 27
 versions of beginnings assessed, 28–31, 187, 684 and n.1, 686–9
Arsaces the founder, 28–31
 feudatory status, 29
 throne-name Arsaces, 30 and n. 3, 42, 684
 sequence of the early Arsacids, 31; genealogy and table, 687–8; chronology, 782–3
Gotarzes I, 41–4, 47, 87
 dynastic struggles, 42, 44, 48–9, 58, 68, 73–8, 88, 93
 dynastic link with Armenia, 56; Arsacid dethroned, 142; dynastic table, 517–18; court customs, 706–7, 709; link with Kushān rulers? 142; Iberian Arsacids, 520
 a new Vologeses II, 94
 chronological table, 98–9
Bahrām Chōbin a descendant, 163–4 in traditional history, 366, 378, 388–9, 404, 409, 473–6; chronology, 386–7
 claim to Kayanian descent, 438, 470
 as legendary heroes, 459
 heir as king of Armenia, 517
 religious endowments, 663
 the succession, 690–2
 coronation fire, 695–6
 legendary genealogy, 697
 king's council and nobles, 698–708 *passim*
 court protocol, 709
 court officials, 710
 rock-reliefs, 735, 1041–6
 Māni a descendant, 965
see also kingship
Arsameia, on the Euphrates, 841
Arsameia on the Nymphaios, 842–3, 867
Arsamosata, 84, 88, 510
Arsanias/Murād Šū river, 84
Arshak, *see* Arsaces
Arshak, Armenian king, 530
Arshak II, Armenian king, 530
Arsharunik, 531
Arshavir (Phraates IV?), 705
Arshat, the scribe, 704
arslan, lion, 623
 art, 575, 866, 1027–1148
 Seleucid, 15, 1029–30, 1031–7 *passim*
 in Achaemenian Asia Minor, 103–5
 in Commagene, 113, 1049
 Scythian and Hellenistic Bactrian, 193–4
 Gandharan, 206, 208–9, 555, 849, 955–6
 Mesopotamian, 492–3; innovations, 1049–50
 Urartian, 506
 Iranian influence on Armenia and Georgia, 532; on Arab art, 612; on Buddhist iconography, 556–7, 619, 623
 Sino-Iranian links, 537–8, 555–8; in the steppes, 538–40
 pure steppe art, 539
 Roman influence in Iran, 581–2
 Irano-Byzantine, 582
 “Parthian frontality”, 582, 1050
 religious data in Parthian, 844–5
 Hellenism in Kushān, 848–9, 1029
 Parthian, 1027–54
 Achaemenian, 1027–8, 1031; survivals, 1047; origin of investiture scenes, 1081 n. 6
 introduction of Greek art into Iran, 1028
 Hellenism, 1029; in coins, 1029–31; under Greek kings, 1032–7; Parthian period, 1037–46; outline of development, 1046–54
 Graeco-Buddhist, 1053–4
 Sasanian, 1055–1129
 royal apotheosis in, 1080–95 *passim*, 1100
 Sasanian minor arts, 1098–1112
 in Transoxiana, 1130–48
see also coinage, sculpture, silverware, etc.
Arta, father of Kharahostes, 195
artabānukān, as name of a vineyard, 694
Artabanus/Ardavan I, Arsacid king, 29, 283, 688

INDEX

- Artabanus (*cont.*)
 historicity questioned, 30, 94 n. 1
 coinage, 283
- Artabanus II, 38, 294–6
 against nomads, 38
 death, 39
 coinage, 42
 youngest son of Priapatius, 688
theopatōr, 873
- Artabanus III, former king of Atropatene, 68–9, 295–6, 702, 1262
 pronounced king at Ctesiphon, 69
 vacates the throne, 72–3
 peace with the Romans, 74
 restored to the throne, 75
 coinage, 295
 his letter to Susa, 682, 718
 his successor, 691
 and Seleucia, 720–1
 helped by Izates II, 728
- Artabanus IV
 coinage, 94, 297
 ruler in Media, 94
 control of Mesopotamia and Susa, 94
- Artabanus IV, pretender, 86
- Artabanus V, last Parthian king, 94, 476, 912
 or Artabanus IV, 94 n. 1
 dates, 94–5, 782–3
 Susa stele, 95, 691, 735, 872–3, 1153
 proposed Caracalla match, 95, 559
 war with the Romans, 95
 coinage, 95–6
 slain by Ardashir, 96, 118–19, 203, 484
 in traditional history, 378–80, 398
- Artabazos, 311, 487
- Artabazos, 181, 235
- Artacoana, 182
 Alexandria-amongst -the Arians, 182
- Artagnes, 113
- Artakhshahr-Khwarra, *see* Firūzābād
- Artamania, 412
- Artashes, Roman ruler of part of Armenia, 141, 145
- Artashes, son of Arshavir (Phraates IV?), 705
- Artaśumara, 412
- Artatama, 412
- Artavahiš fire, 891
- Artavasdes I, king of Armenia, 41
- Artavasdes/Artavazd II, king of Armenia, 523
 and Crassus, 53, 56, 516–17
 with Orodes I against the Romans, 56
 and Mark Antony, 59; killed, 59
- Artavasdes of Media, 64
- Artavasdes/Ardavazzd, son of Artabanus V, 96
- Artavazd, 126
see also Artavasdes
- Artā Virāf, 839, 1177
Artā Virāf nānāk, 1178–9
- Artaxata (modern Artashat), capital of Armenia, 59, 82–3, 85, 517
 seized by Vologeses I, 79
 customs post, 571
 official market, 762
- Artaxerxes I, Sasanian king, *see* Ardashir I
- Artaxerxes I Longimanus, Achaemenian king, 471, 498
- Artaxerxes II, 61, 304
 worship of Anāhitā 100
 consecrated Zela for the Persian gods, 109
 and Orontes I of Armenia, 506
 legendary ancestor of the Arsacids, 697
- Artaxerxes III, 305
- Artaxerxes IV, 305
- Artaxes, son of Artavasdes I, 65
- Artaxiads, Third Armenian Monarchy, 507, 512
 dynastic table, 513
- Artaxias, king of Armenia
 reduced to vassalage by Antiochus IV, 32
 strategos of Greater Armenia, 512
 independent under Roman patronage, 513
 expansionist policy, 513
 dynastic table, 513
 consolidation, 514
- Artaxias, son of Vramshapuh, king of Armenia, 142
- Artaxšahr-Xvarreh, district of, 628, 630, 676
- Artemis, 310, 533
 as Nanaia/Anahita, 32 and n. 4, 866
 Azara temple of, 35
 as Anaitis, 100
 temple of Artemis-Nanaia, 716
 Artemis Tauropolos, 846
- Artemita/Chalasar, 21, 721, 823
 refounded as Dastigird/Daskara, 758
- artēštarān, warrior estate, 633
- artik i vazurg, “Great War”, 981
- Artvahiš fire temple, 640
- Āryadeva, disciple of Nāgārjuna, 206–7
- Aryāmān, *see* Airyaman
- Aryān, use of the term, 747
- Arzhang, 446
- Arzūr, son of Ahriman, 418, 421
- aśā/arta, *see rta*
- Aśa, 347–8, 356–7
- Asaac/Arsace/Kūchān, early capital of the Arsacids, 768
- asaśbarān, social estate of horsemen, 632

INDEX

- asabār nīpēk*, list of horsemen, 660, 700, 734
 Asadi, 432, 602, 603
asafoetiida, 551 n. 2, 560, 564, 756
asar rōshnīh, “endless light”, 975
asrās, fundament, 1016
 Aša Vahīsta, Holy Immortal, 346, 967
 Ašavazdah, son of Sāyuzdri, 413
 Ašavazd/Ashavazd, son of Pourdaxhti, 413
 Ash, son of Siyāvush, 475
 Asha, *see* Aša Vahīsta
 al-A'šā, poet, 609–10
Ašbāb al-ukhātūd, 605
 Ashk, Arsacid king, 476
 Ashkāniyān, *see* Arsacids
 Ashqalūn, demon, 979
 Ashtam, 251
 Ashtishat/Acesilene, holy forest at, in Taron province, 534
 Ashur, stele from, 681
 Aši, 345
 the yazad of reward, 427, 465
 Asia Minor, 837, 843
 Iranians in, 100–15; religion, 100–1;
 temple estates, 107–10
 Magians of, 826–31
 and Mithraism, 854
see also Rūm
 Asii/Asiani, Scythian nomads, 192, 242
 rulers of the Tochari, 197
 become Kushāns, 197
 Asinaeus, Jewish apprentice of Nehardēā, 69–71
 governorship conferred on him, 71
 murdered by wife of Anilaeus, 71
 leads a revolt, 911–12
 Asmodaeus, 835
 Asnavant, Mount, 452
 Aśoka, 16, 186, 263, 1236
 and Buddhism, 186, 950–1
 death, Maurya empire disintegrates, 189
 edicts of, 1180
 Asōristan, *see* Babylonia
āśo-xwatāyih, of the Arsacids, 475
aspā, significance of in names, 437
 Asphahbed, noble family, 705
 Aspandiat, 470
 Asparukans/Vāspūhrakāns, noble family, 705
 Asparukh, viceroy of Iberia, 515, 526
 ring of, 527 fig. 1
aspastī/aspistī, lucerne, 495
āsrōk karp, body of a priest, 417
āsrōn, 'srwñ, priests, 633
 Assur, 492, 502 and n. 4, 844, 1063
 Parthian monuments, 1049
 Assyria, 89, 481, 505
 Adiabene part of, 496
 Jews settled in, 498
 Assyrian(s), 481, 486, 494, 498, 533, 593, 827, 927
 Astabād, 723
 Astana, in the Tārim, 549
 finds of silk textiles, 1109–10
 Astarābad, 768
 Astauene, 696
 Astghik, Armenian goddess, 534
 Astō-vidhātū, demon of death, 425
 astrology, astrologers
 at court, 134
 “Chaldeans”, 501
 Babylonian, 567
 Magians as, 830, 832
 Khusrau II and, 896
 and Judaism, 921
 Astvat. ārēta, the victorious Sōsyant, 356
 Astyages, 389, 484
asura/abura, god, 343, 465
 demon, 619
 Asūristān, *see* Babylonia
 Aśvaghoṣa, poet and dramatist, 1236
 author of *Buddharacita, Śariputraprakarana*
 and *Saundaranandakārya*, 205
 influence on Kanishka I, 205–7
 popularization of the Buddha image, 206
 al-Aswad, local prophet in the Yemen, 607
atarsākāyib, infringement of wife's legal status, 647
 Atāš, the son of God, 897
 ātashgāb, enclosed fire temple, 1074
 ātaxā bandak, āturān bandak, sacred slaves, 640
al-Āthār al-bāqiyā, *see* Birūni
 Athenaeus, 467
 Athene, 35, 532, 824, 847
 Athens, 87, 100, 112, 161
 Academy closed and Neo-Platonists expelled, 161, 486, 571
 ābrāvan-, estate of priests, 632–3
 Āthwya / Āptya / Asbiān / Ābtīn, father of Frēdōn, 427
 Atrak river, 279
 Atropatene, *see* Āzarbājān
 Attalus III, 112
 Attambelos I, of Characene, 312–13
 Attambelos II, 312
 Attambelos V, 90
 Ātur-Anāhit, daughter and senior wife of Shāpur I, 644, 707, 712
 Ātur Farnbag, *see* Farnbāy
 Āturfarnbag i Fraxvzātān, 1181
 Aturfarnbag-Narseh, 1171, 1177

INDEX

- Ātur-Ohrmazd, 1171, 1177
 Āturpātakān, 730, 731
see also Āzarbāijān
 Āturpāt i Mahraspandān/Ādurbād i Mahr-spand, magupat of Iran, 395, 630, 698, 886–7, 1120 n. 3, 1171, 1179
 defender of orthodoxy? 140 and n. 2
 ordeal of, 140, 996
 sanction of confiscations, 734
 in the *Dēnkard*, 894, 1181–2
 “Sayings” and *Andarz*, 1181
 Āturpāt i Zartuštān, 1171, 1181
 āturvaxš, minister, 641
 Augustine, Saint, 500, 973, 987
 Augustus, 65–6, 77, 109, 292
 peace with Phraates IV, 66–78
 death, 69
aurand/arvand, hero, 507
 Aurelian, Roman emperor, 128
 Aurelius, Marcus, 93
 Aus, the, 600
 Autophradates I, of Persis, 302–3
 Autophradates II, 304
 Avaca, 196 n. 3
 Avalokiteśvara, 962
Avalokiteśvara-dhāraṇī, 1232
 Avarair, battle, 147, 521, 942
 Avars, from the Balkans, 159, 169, 1104
 Khan, 170
 cooperate with Persians, against Byzantines, 170
 Avesta, 85, 172, 343–56 *passim*, 360, 591, 642, 669–70, 672, 687, 697, 803, 829, 845, 874
 put into writing, 162, 494–5, 868; codified, 692
 as source for traditional history and myth, 365, 385–400 *passim*, 412–16, 419–465 *passim*
 lost books of, 364, 415, 416, 467, 976;
Dāmdād Nask, 415, 1191; *Bariš Nask*, 1160
 nationalism in, 408–9
 dates of, 412–13
kavi in, 436
 lands of the Avestan people, 438
 product of the east, 481
daeva (Armenia and Georgia), 535
 legal nasks of, 628–9, 1175
 on social estates, 632–3
 recited during festivals, 796–7
 alteration to *fravāši* hymn, 806
 additions by Shāpūr I, 878–9
 and Shāpūr II, 886–7
 under Kavād, 892
 and Mazdakism, 996–7, 1019
 in the Parthian period, 1159–60
 the *Nirangestān*, 1159, 1171, 1176, 1186
 inspiration for Pahlavī literature, 1170–2;
 1172–95 *passim*
Erpatištān, 1171, 1176
Hūspāram Nask, 1171, 1176
 list of Pahlavī commentators, 1171–2
 Avestan commentaries, 1172
see also Gathas, Yashths, *Yasna*
 Avroman parchments, 285, 627, 644, 659, 671, 682, 745, 1257, 1263
 language, 1152–3
 Avyanga, Magian holy girdle, 850
 Axidares, son of Pacorus II, 87
 Axt, the sorcerer, 1179, 1182
 Axum, 605
Ayādgār i Zarēran, fragment of the Kayanian epic, 364, 393, 415, 1157–8, 1167, 1231, 1267
Ayātbrima, one of the *gāhāmbārs*, 795
Ayātkār i Zāmāspik, 1194
ayačan-nanaistānakān, as name of a vineyard, 694
āyina-yi Jam, Jam’s mirror, 426
 Āz, arch-demon, 357, 979, 982
āzādān, *see* *āzātān*
 Āzādbeh, governor of Hira, 487
 Azanes, son of Artaios, 1216
 Āzarbāijān/Atropatene, 83, 288, 294, 382, 391, 402–3, 467, 513, 516, 682–3, 691, 701, 714, 762–3, 1261
 Mark Antony in, 58–66
 retreat of Bahram Chōbin, 165
 invaded by Heraclius, 169–70, 523
 northern trade route, 509
 taken by Artaxias I, 513
 Mazdakites in, 1001, 1004–5
 script, 1151
 Sasanian priestly power in, 1161
 Āzargushnasp, the sacred fire, 382
 Āzarmēdukt, sister of Bōrān, ruler of the Sasanian empire, 171
āzātān, social estate of nobles, 394, 632–4, 644–6, 700, 703, 1276
āzāt-nāmak, certificate of manumission, 639
 Azd, Arab tribe, 603, 604
 Aždahāk/Dahāk, *see* Aži Dahāka
 Azes I, Indo-Scythian emperor, 194, 196
 coinage, 41 n. 2, 1030
 struggle with Greeks for Taxila, 196
 Azes II, 196
aži/abi, serpent, 428
 Aži Dahāk/Dahāk, 367, 374, 383–5, 426–7, 802, 845
 in Iranian common beliefs, 345–57 *passim*
 mythical rule and fall, 372

INDEX

- Azi Dahāka (*cont.*)
 in Iranian traditional history, 396–454
passim
 as Tāzī/Arab, 426
- Aži Srūvara, 428
- Azilises, Indo-Scythian emperor, 196
 coinage, 1030
- Azkājuvār, king of Chorasmia, 255
- Azon (Jason?), 514
- Baanes, *see* Vahan
- Bābak al-Khurramī, 1004–5, 1013, 1015
 marriage of, 1010–11
- Bābakiyya, Mazdakites, 1004
- Bāboway, Catholicos, 943
- Babu, 925 n. 5
- Babylon, 74, 76, 89, 90, 94, 121, 402, 426,
 447, 492, 502 and n. 4, 509, 550, 720,
 826, 837, 861
 astronomers, 95
 cult statue of Anāhitā, 100
 death of Alexander, 185
 Cyrus takes possession, 481
 Achaemenian capital, 482
 plans of Alexander the Great, 482
 falls to Seleucus I, 482
 lost by Antiochus IV, 483
 becomes Parthian, 483, 718
 decay, 486
 centre of Jewry, 499
- Babylonia/Asūristān, 71, 76, 86, 88–9, 129,
 285, 310, 378, 386, 443, 471, 481–104
passim, 533, 635, 730, 754, 929, 968,
 1265
 Mithrades III gains control of, 49
 Jewish connection, 56, 69, 73, 498–9
 capital Seleucia, 74, 482
 called Asūristān by Iranian rulers, 89
 Trajan's retreat, 91, 484
 smallpox epidemic, 93
 Manichaeism, 97, 500
 invasion of Ptolemy III, 187
 Arab occupation, 486
 language and literature, 493–7
 Mandaeans of, 500
 occultism, 567
 geography, 757–60; agriculture, 760
 time-reckoning of, 778–81 *passim*; Baby-
 lonian calendar, 784–5
 religion in, 821, 831
 Jews of, 909–23 *passim*
see also Mesopotamia, Iraq
 “The Babylonian Tree”, *see* *Drakht-i asūrig*
- Bactra, *see* Balkh
- Bactria, 5–10, 28, 32, 75, 100, 146, 187, 403,
 438, 510, 542, 557, 822, 1140
 language, 16, 146, 199, 1131; and litera-
 ture, 1250–8
- Arsaces a local ruler, 31
 the Bactrians, 35, 82, 181; cavalry, 182,
 185
 Greek settlements, 38, 185, 188–9, 236,
 508
 in the Kushān empire, 90, 198
 worship of Anaitis, 100
 the village, 110
 Persian–Macedonian conflict, 182
 leaves the Seleucid empire, 187, 237;
 attempted reconquest, 187–8
 independent kingdom, 188; extent of
 rule, 239–41
 invasion of India, 189, 952
 Eucratides, 189
 Menander, 190
 nomad invasion, 191–8; Shibarghan
 treasure, 193
 art, 193–4, 1029, 1031, 1052; of Northern
 Bactria, 1141–5; and Indian art, 1049
 Sasanian governorship, 209
 conquered by the Huns, 212
 and Alexander, 235–6
 under the Seleucids, 236–7
 coins, 240, 847, 1029
 report of Chang Ch'ien, 243–4, 540–1;
 Ta-hia/Ta-hsia, 243, 540–1
 Hellenism, 508, 846
 religion, 846–7
 Parthian conquest, 952
 architecture, 1031–2
 colonies in Turkestan, 1257
see also Ai Khanum
- Badakhshān, 188
 Bactrian fortified city, 188
- Bādhām, Persian governor in the Yemen,
 607
- bag, god, 973
- Baga, Sogdian god, 902
- Bagadat, 299
- Bagadates, priest of Artemis, 10
- Bāgda(t), in the Talmud, 490
- Baghdad, 121, 160, 482, 608, 948
 imperial court, 177
 derivation of name, 490
 Manichees in, 989
- Baghdādī, 1004, 1013
 on the Bātīnis, 1015
- Baghlān, 193
 well of, 1250 n. 1
 temple-acropolis, *see* Surkh Kotal
- Bagratids, coronants of the Arsacids, 528
- Bahag, predecessor of Āturpāt, magupat of
 Iran, 886

INDEX

- Bahman, son of Isfandiyār, 377, 378, 386, 395, 396, 402, 437, 454
 summary of role in traditional history, 370–2
- Bahman Fortress, 461
- babr, bahr pat xvēšib*, family ownership, 658 and n. 1
- Bahrain, 12, 121, 600–1, 603, 608, 609, 757
 Sasanian province, 1024
- Bahrām I, Sasanian king, 121, 398, 500, 858
 king of Gilān, 126, 701, 707; Carmania, 730
 parentage, 127
 religion under, 128, 881, 936; and Māni, 970–2, 1196
 coinage, 325
 mints, 331
 Bishāpur rock-relief, 1084
- Bahrām II, 127–8, 129 n. 1, 401, 693, 706, 730, 1115
 against Carus, 128, 210
 against Hormizd I Kūshānshāh, 210
 coinage, 326–9
 court party of, 737
 religion under, 881–4
 rock-reliefs of, 1084–5
- Bahrām III, 128 n. 1, 129, 477
 deposed by Narseh, 129, 693, 1209
- Bahrām IV, 143, 326, 767
 in the Kushān western empire, 334
 portrait on a seal, 1100
- Bahrām V Gōr, 134, 144–6, 630, 640, 770, 776
 coinage, 145, 254, 258, 327, 330–1, 332, 336; copied, 1125
 in traditional history, 379, 381–2, 395, 401, 410, 471
 and Mesopotamia, 485
 and the Lakhmids, 598
 religion under, 890, 941–2
 and court entertainers, 1007 n. 1
 builder of the Sarvistān palace? 1065
- Bahrām VI Chōbin, 133, 163–5, 591, 916, 1168, 1283
 Sasanian commander, 163
 rebellion against Hormizd IV, 163–4;
 supported by the Jews, 896
 against Khusrau Abarvēz for the throne, 164–5
 in traditional history, 165, 360–1, 363, 383, 393, 399, 404, 411, 475
 coinage, 329
 and Arsacid legitimacy, 474
 of the Mihrān family, 704
- Bahrām Gōr, a Sasanian foundation, 767
- Bahrām, legendary warrior, 459
- Bahrām, son of the king of Mescene, 708
- Bahrām b. Jūdarz/Gōdarz, 475
- Bahrām b. Mardānshāh, mōbad, 419–20, 476
- Bahrām b. Pazdū, author of the *Zarātuštr-nāma*, 1174
- bahr i duxtib*, daughter's share of an inheritance, 666, 668
- bahr i katak-bānūkib*, "widow's portion", 666, 668
- bahr i pat xvēšib*, individual shares in an inheritance, 653
- bahr i pusib*, *bahr i xvēš*, son's share of an inheritance, 666, 668
- bai*, god, 973
- bai'a*, ritual of, 1010
- Baikal, lake
 Chinese warring factions, 211
- Bak/Bag Nask*, *see Dēnkard*
- bakanapati*, defined, 200
- bakradān*, wise men, 394
- Bakhtiyāri tribes, 752
- Bakr, Arab tribe, 167, 609
- Bakr b. Wā'il, 601, 603, 608
- Balādhuri, historian, 1280
- Balalyk Tepe, monument, 1089
 Hephthalite residence, 1144
- Bal'ami, 360, 419, 1279
- Balāsagān, 730, 731
- Balāsh/Valgash, Sasanian king, 149, 891, 945
 coinage, 327, 330
- Balāsh I, *see* Vologeses I
- Balāshfarr, diocese, 759
- Balawaste, 269
- Balissus river, 53
- Balkh/Bactra, capital of Bactria, 142, 183, 258–9, 438, 444, 447, 472, 541, 770–1, 847, 955–7
 conquered by Bahrām Chōbin, 163
 and Seleucid defence of the eastern frontier, 186
 mint, 186, 212, 279–80
- Euthydemus against Antiochus III, 188
 sacked by Sacaraucae, 193
- Buddhist temple, 466
- Luhāsp and, 466
- Alexandria/Lan-shih, 541
 on the Silk Road, 548
 and Sasanian historiography, 698
- Balkh/Pakhl, *pakhlavuni*, 705
 and Buddhism, 955–60 *passim*
 excavated, 1270
- Balōch, tribe, 772
- balsam, Judaean, 739
- Baluchistān/Gedrosia, 17, 130
- balyṣa-/bārza*, 1242

Cambridge University Press
 978-0-521-24693-4 — The Cambridge History of Iran
 Volume 3: The Seleucid, Parthian and Sasanid Periods
 Index
[More Information](#)

INDEX

- bam*, lowest note on a stringed instrument, 502
Bāmiyān, Afghanistan, 555–6, 849
 Buddhist rock-architecture, 954
 Buddhism, 956–8 *passim*, 1258
bandak, for a slave, 635, 929 n. 7
Bandar Gaz, 215
Bandar Shāh, 214
Band-i Qaisar dam, 563
Banū Qaila, Arab tribe, 600
Banū Shaibān, 601
Banū Tamīm, 601
 baptism, 837, 860, 966
 baptists, 860, 863, 907, 965 and n. 6
 see also Mandeans
bar, increase, 655
bāra/bāz, land-tax, 744
Bārbad, musician at the court of Khusrau II, 171, 1167
Barbalissus, 125
Barbaricum, port on the Indus, 548, 756
Bardaisān, *see* Bardesanes
Bardasir/Veh-Ardashir, in Kirmān, 773
Bardesanes of Edessa, 82, 840–1, 860, 926–7, 1266
Bard-i Nishānda, 866, 870–1
 terrace and sculptures, 1042–3, 1046
bardz, cushion, 707
barasman, bundle of twigs, 104, 327, 869, 872
barid/veredus, courier's horse, 564
Baris/Breb Nask, *see* Dēnkard
Bārīz, tribe, 772
Bar Kokhba War, 918
Barkōl region, 545
Barlaam, 536, 583
Bārmān, Turanian hero, 373, 457
Barm-i-Dilak, 129, 881
barqūq, 566
Barsemius, ruler of Hatra, 491
Bar Shaumā, rebel, 942
barsman, *see* barasman
 barter, 672
Barygaza / Broach / Bharukaccha, Indian Ocean port, 548, 756
 taken by Appollodotus, 952
Barza, 762
Barzapharnes, general of Pacorus, 57
Baseirta, Arsacid queen, 67
basileion, 9 n. 6
basileus, Byzantine title for the Persian ruler, 578
Baṣra, 488
Bassus, Q. Caecilius, Pompeian general, 56
Bastūr/Bastavairi, son of Zarēr, 376 and n. 2, 415, 467
Bastwar, 1158
Basūs, War of, 609
Bat, foster-brother of King Varazdat, 531
bāṭin, 997, 1001, 1022
 in Bātīnī belief, 1016–17
Bātīnīs, 1004–6 *passim*, 1022–3
 identity with Mazdakites, 1014–16; source for Mazdakite beliefs, 1016–18
Batnae, in Persis, 744, 762
Bawri, 426 and n. 3
Bāxdhī, 438
Baxlo mint, 212
Baxtāfrīt, 1181
baxtikib, division (of property), 668
bāz, falcon, 497
bāz, taxes or customs, 1263
Bāzigrabān/bāzigrabān, customs post, 767, 1263
Bāzrangī king of Fārs, 358
bdeashkā, title of Wardens of the Marches, 529
Bedel pass, 543
Behistun, *see* Bisitūn
Bēl, 492, 532
Bēlābād/Bēt-Lāpāt (renamed Gundēshāpūr), prison of, 500
 see also Gundēshāpūr
Beh-Ardashir, 723
Bei-sbu, 250
Belisarius, Byzantine general, 152
 against the Persians, 155
 and Procopius, 1273
Bema, Manichaean festival, 985–6
bənay qyāmā, Sons of the Covenant, 945 n. 3
Berenice, widow of Antiochus II, 5
Berossos, Babylonian priest, author of *Baθνωνιακά* or *Xaλδατκά*, 492, 826
Besēchanā/Pērōz-Shāpūr/al-Anbār, *see* Massece
Bessus, Persian leader, 182
Bēt Arbāyē, 932
Bēt Garmay, 932
Bēt Armāyē, 754, 929, 932
bēth-EL, house of God, 871
Beth Lapat/Veh Antioch Shāpūr, *see* Gundēshāpūr
Beth Nuhadrā, 23
Bēt Hūzāyē, 932
Bēt Qatrāyē, 932
Bēvak, 1187
Bēžan/Vijan, of the house of Kashvād, 443, 452, 456, 458, 459, 464
 representing Wēzan, 1156 n. 6
Bezeklik, paintings at, 962
Bharukaccha/Broach, *see* Barygaza
Bid, 446
bidakhsh, *see* pitiakhsh

INDEX

- Bidarafsh, 376
 Bid Zard, rock sculpture, 1043
 Bindoe, brother-in-law of Hormizd IV, 164–5
 death 165
 Bindusāra, Maurya king, 950
 bir, Uighur reed pen, 622
 birds and beasts, fabulous
 in Iranian common beliefs, 346, 401, 830
 Karshiptar, 348
 Xvarənah as a ram, 380, 886; bird, 432
 Vṛtra, the serpent, 428, 444, 853
 Srūvara, the serpent, 429
 Birmāya, the cow, 429
 Kamak, rain-withholding bird, 430
 Kapūd, the wolf, 430
 in Shamanism, 852
 heavenly bull and cow, 853–4
 see also Bull Uniquely Created, horses, Simurgh
 Birjand, 1165
 Birmāya, the cow, 429
 Birūnī, Muslim scientist, 384, 1184, 1281
 on the date of Māni's birth, 95
 al-Āthar al-bāqiyā, 362, 390, 1246
 as source for traditional history, 418–71
 passim
 on intercalation, 786–9
 al-Qānūn al-Mas'ūdī, 787
 on Zoroastrian festivals, 792, 803–11
 passim, 880
 source on Mazdakism, 994, 997, 1003,
 1015
 on Khwārazm, 1136
 Sogdian materials in, 1218
 bisa, slaves, 635
 Bišbaliq, capital of Pei-t'ing, 268
 Bishāpur/Veh-Shāpur, Fārs province, capital of Shāpur I, 117, 121, 570, 591, 733, 751,
 1124 n. 4
 rock-carvings, 126–31 *passim*, 581, 864
 bishopric, 139
 inscription of Apasai/Afṣā the scribe, 682,
 1208
 temple in, 846, 1074–5
 inscription of Shāpur I at, 875
 palace of Shāpur I, 1062, 1064–5
 “Investiture” and victory reliefs of
 Shapur I, 1082–4
 equestrian relief of Bahrām I, 1084
 rock-relief of Bahrām II, 1084
 mosaics, 1089
 colossal figure of Shāpur I, 1089
 votive monument, 1090
 astōdān, 1095–6
 inscription of Narseh, 1209
 Bishkent, 245
 Bisitūn/Behistun, reliefs and inscriptions,
 26, 681, 871, 1041, 1048, 1051, 1078
 of Darius, 24, 100, 106, 506 n. 2, 635 n. 3,
 696, 1078, 1082 and n. 3; Babylonian
 calendar, Persian months, 784
 Greek inscription, 33; the associated
 Heracles statue, 1037
 of Gotarzes I or II? 41–4, 78, 458, 691
 726
 of Mithradates II, 1153
 Bistām, brother-in-law of Hormizd IV, 164–5
 successor of Bahrām Chōbin, 166
 coinage, 166, 330
 revolt of, 693
 Bistheibana, Arsacid queen, 67
 bit akīti, festival house, 502
 bitaxš, see pitiakbsh
 Black Sea, 509, 526, 533
 blmny, Brahman, 907
 b'nykn bndryčpt, “mentor of the ladies”, 713
 Boğazköy document, 412
 Bōn-po, 862
 Bōrān, daughter of Khusrau II, 171
 ruler of Sasanian empire, 171, 326
 Borsippa/bwlsplcyn, province, 706
 Bosphorus, the, 509
 Brahmīns, 882, 950
 braman, Brahman, 907
 brāt-hambāy, partners, 642
 BRBYT'n, princes, 699, 702–3
 bronzes, 1037, 1094
 Brutus, 57
 'bwdg'an *aβšōdayān, “baptist”, 907
 btbty/rb trbs, state officials, 706, 735–7
 see also pitiakbsh
 Buddha/Būdāsaf, 371
 Amitābha, 537; Mi-t'o-fo, 557, 619, 956
 Māni as, 861, 989
 Ādi, 863
 Sākyamuni, 949, 955; teachings codified,
 949
 Maitreya, 956
 Avalokiteśvara, 956
 as predecessor of Māni, 983–4
 Buddharatī, 206–7
 Buddhism, Buddhists, 14, 186, 190, 456,
 536, 554, 683, 773, 775, 853, 882, 1219
 and Kanishka I, 204 and n. 3
 Third Council, 204
 texts, 205–6, 209, 617; Bactrian, 1256–8
 Sogdian manuscripts, 271, 615; de-
 scriptive list, 1221–3
 iconography, 556–7, 619, 623, 849
 Saka texts, 614, 1233–43 *passim*

INDEX

- Buddhism (*cont.*)
 of the Turks, 617–19; Iranian influence, 619
 and Archebios of Bactria, 848
 and the Kushāns, 849, 954–9 *passim*
 and Manichaeism in China, 861–2, 989
 influenced by Manichaeism, 862–3
 Sogdian, 938, 959–62
 among Iranian peoples, 948–64
 formation of sects, 949–55 *passim*
 origins in north India, 949
 spread by Aśoka, 951
 in Khotan, 951–2, 962–4
 in eastern Iran, 957
 in Manichaeism, 960, 985–6
 Bactrian Buddhist art, 1145
see also Shamanism
- Bugut, Old Turk inscription, 617, 621
- Bujnūrd, 279
- Bukhārā, 252, 258, 346, 615
 coinage, 145, 235, 245
 Persian language, 176
- Bukharan Sughd, 246, 250, 257
 and Siyāvush, 449
 under the Hephthalites, 1144
 “History of Bukhārā”, *see* Narshakhi
- Bukhtanashar/Nebukadnesser/Bukhtarshah, 447, 466, 499
- Bukht Narse, general of Luhrāsp, 458
- Bulayiq/Phalayākā, 272, 616, 621
- Bulgars, 170
 bullae, 734, 742–3, 1098, 1213–14
- Bull Uniquely Created/*Gāv aēvo. data/Gāv i ēvadād*, 351–5 *passim*, 418, 420
- bun, 655, 658
 defined, 651
- Bundabistn, also called *Zand-āgāhib*, 348, 350, 364, 384–6, 396–7, 899, 901, 975, 977, 979, 1186, 1191–4
 on Gayōmard, 370
 as source for traditional history and myth, 415–75 *passim*
 and the *Dāmdād Nask*, 415
 and the *Vashītmānsar Nask*, 416
 on Luhrāsp’s genealogy, 466
 Babylonian astronomy in, 501
 and Iranian geography, 750, 752, 1188
 calendar names in, 868
 on Mazdean cosmogony, 899
 summary of knowledge in, 983
 speculations on time in, 1182
 author Farnbag, 1191
- Bundos, 583, 1018
 identified with Zardusht, 996 and n. 2
 Mazdakite saint, 1013
- Buner, 447
- Bunkish, 469
- burial, 827, 831, 845, 852
 Scythian, 195; Hepthalite, 212
 in ossuaries, 1140
- Burzēn-mihr, the Sasanian Fire, 467, 768, 902
- Burzmihir, son of Sūkhrā, 404
- Bürzneš, *hamarkar* of Āzarbāijān, 683
- Burzoe, Persian scholar, 161
- Bu-ston, author, 1231
- būtak, būtakīh procedure for guardianship, 650
- buzurgān, *see* wčlk’n
- buzurg farmadhbār, *see* vuzurg-framatār
- Buzurgmīhr, *see* Vuzurgmīhr
- Buzurgmīhr, son of Būktak, royal official, 738
- bytbī, *see* pitiakbsh
- Bytbišn/Bitaxšakān, derivation of the name, 645
- Byzantine Empire, 1, 133, 323, 486, 520, 524, 606, 744, 763, 893, 1283
 Marutha embassies to Iran, 143
 Sasanian guardianship of Theodosius II, 144, 578–9
 relations with Bahrām V Gōr, 145, 890; Yazdgard II, 146; Kavād, 150–2; Khusrau I, 153–60; Hormizd, IV, 162–3; Khusrau II, 164–70
 against the Huns, 147
 Christian Church, 149, 486, 571–3, 576, 584–7
 hostilities over Lazica, 155–6, 521
 in Arabia, 157, 596, 600
 trade, 157–8, 571, 741, 757
 Arab raids, 158
 intervention in Armenia, 159
 helps reinstate Khusrau II, 164–6, 574, 896–7
 murder of Maurice, 167, 578
 Sasanian invasion, 167–9; Jerusalem, 168; Egypt, 169; countered by Heraclius, 169–70
 death of Phocus, 168
 Persian–Roman relations reviewed, 173
 coinage, 329, 336
 in Iranian traditional history, 397, 403, 406, 409–11
 Sasanian contacts, 568–92; frontier, 569–70; population movements, 570–1; trade agreements, 571; state, 574; mutual awareness, 574–7; equality, 577–9; military influences, 580–1; art, 581–2; learning, 582–4; Christianity, 584–7; government institutions, 587–8; military administration, 588–9; mutual enmity, 591
 edict of toleration, 586, 890

INDEX

- Cadusians, 766
 Čāčasta, lake, 391, 403, 440–1, 452
 Caesar, Julius, 52
 Roman civil war, 56
 plans a campaign against Parthia, 56
 assassination, 56
 Caesarea Mazaca, chief city of Cappadocia, 168, 731
 siege of, 914
 Caius, Roman general, 313
 čakar, čakarib, levirate marriage, 649, 1000
 see also family law
 calendars, see time-reckoning
 Caligula, 74
 caliphate
 taxation modelled on Khusrav I's, 153
 Callinicum
 battle, 152
 customs post, 571
 official market, 762
 Calliope, 191, 823
 Callisthenes, pseudo-, 377, 472
 Cambyses, son of Cyrus, 388, 447–8, 470, 593, 781
 canals, 121, 773, 914
 Pallacottas, 69–71
 Nahr 'Isā/Saglāwiya, 70, 759
 Royal/Nehār Malkā/Nahr al-Malik, 70, 85, 90, 719, 724, 758, 759
 Nahrawān system in Iraq, 160, 758
 of al-Sarā, 602
 Shaur (Choaspes?), 753
 Masruqān/*Ardashiragān, 753
 see also irrigation
 čand advēnak i xvēšib, legal use of, 656
 Canton, 552
 Cappadocia, 58, 84, 104, 107, 482, 789, 827, 831, 846
 emergence of the monarchy, 106, 114
 temples, 107–9
 village organization, 110
 Iranization–hellenisation, 111–12
 organisation of the state, 111
 relationship with Rome, 114
 cultural unity with Armenia and Parthia, 114
 invasion by Sasanians, 126, 168, 519
 invasion by Huns, 142
 art still unknown, 1049
 Captivity of Balāshfarr, diocese, 759
 Caracalla, Roman emperor, 94, 124, 297, 926
 concentrates Roman forces in Syria, 95
 ravages Media, 95
 murdered, 95
 proposed Parthian marriage, 95, 559–60
 Caraka, court physician to Kanishka I, 207
 Caraka Samhitā, 207
 Carana
 Karīn-Katak (the modern Erzerum), 59
 Carduchi/Gordyaei, 766
 Carenes/Kārēn/Qārīn, Parthian governor of Mesopotamia, 77–8
 Caria, 101, 105–6
 Carmania, see Kirmān
 carpets, 539, 757, 1108
 Carpocrates of Alexandria, 1020
 Carpocratians
 similarities with Mazdakism, 1020
 Carrhae/Harrān, 60, 95, 838, 1002
 battle of, 8, 49, 52–3, 290, 483, 516, 561
 campaign of, 52–7
 the Surenas of Carrhae, 51
 legend of Rustam, 51
 Captured by the Sasanians, 124, 126
 taken by Romans, 125
 Roman–Sasanian conflict, 138
 as Harrān, 483
 Şabeans and, 1015
 Carus, Roman emperor, 128
 advance against Persian Ctesiphon, 210
 Caspian provinces, 382, 765
 gates, 31, 467, 766
 littoral, 505
 Caspii, 766
 Cassius
 legate of Crassus, 53
 escapes to Carrhae, 54
 escapes to Syria, 55
 suppresses revolt of Aristobulus, 56
 ambushes Pacorus near Antigonea, 56
 Cassius, Avidius, Roman general, 93
 invades Mesopotamia, 93
 Cassius, Gaius, governor of Syria, 77
 Čāstak, 629
 Cašṭana, Saka satrap, 200
 cataphractarii, 562, 580
 Caucasus, 505, 521, 574, 741, 764
 Kāp, 730
 Cayam, Chinese king, 1238
 celibacy, 944, 946
 a Manichaean precept, 985
 ceramics, 1107, 1148
 Khwarazmian canteens, 1136
 Chaboras/Khabur river, 46, 88, 94
 Chāch/Shāsh, 240, 249, 257–60
 cultural affinity with Sogdiana, 1141
 Chahār Jū/Āmul, 257
 Chahār Qāpū, building in the 'Imārat-i Khusrav setting, 1069
 chahār-tāq, defined, 906, 1074
 Chala, in the Chalonitis, 823

INDEX

- Chalasar, *see* Artemita
 Chalcedon, 167, 170
 Council of, 167, 576
 Chaldeans, 501, 755, 827–8
 emperors, 494
 Chāl Tarkhān, stucco panel, 1096–7
 Chalybes, 513
 Chandragupta I/Sandracottas, founder of the Maurya dynasty in northern India, 4, 186, 949–50
 Chandragupta II, 247
 Ch'ang-an, Chinese capital, 176, 274, 546, 547, 553
 Zoroastrian shrines in, 554
 Manichaeism in, 616, 619–20
 Nestorian mission to, 947
 Chang Ch'i'en, envoy to the west, 242, 540–2, 551, 738–9
 on K'ang chü, 1135–6
 Chang I-ch'ao, Chinese imperial commissioner, 268
 Chao-wu, clan name, 553 n. 1
 Characene/Charax/Mesene/Mēshān/Maišān, 40, 90, 130, 282, 370–14, 471, 487, 499, 701, 708, 730–1, 858, 907, 932
 coinage, 310–13
 trade, 310, 312–13
 tribute to Trajan, 313
 chronological table of kings, 315
 history, 594
 semi-independent under the Parthians, 728
 combined in Mēshān, 754–6
 religious sects, 965–6
 Charax Spasinou, *see* Spasinou Charax
 Chares of Mytilene, 467, 468, 1161
 Charikar, 182
 Charis, 823
 Charsada/Pushkalāvati, 190
 Chattemaria, 593
 Chēchast, lake,
 see Čāčasta
 Chen-chiang, 275
 Chēs *see* Shīz
 Chien-chüan (central asian state?), 558
 Ch'i'en-fo-tung, 270
 Ch'i'en Han Shu, *see* Han shu
 Chibrdād Nask, lost book of the Avesta, summarized in the Dēnkard, *see* Dēnkard
 Chilek, site at, 1121
 Sasanian plate, 1119 n. 8, 1123, 1127 n. 5
 Chiltās/Šilathasa, 1239
 chin, defined, 550
 Ch'in court, 558
 China, 372, 410, 432, 561, 962, 1127 n. 5, 1243
 migration into central Asia, 36
 smallpox epidemic, 93
 spread of Christianity, 174
 relations with the Sasanians, 175–6
 haven for Sasanian pretenders, 175
 internal conflict, 175
 Han dynasty, 175
 Sui dynasty, 175
 T'ang dynasty, 175
 Sasanians seek help during the Arab conquest, 176, 547
 hope for restoration of the Sasanian empire, 176
 tribal hostilities within, 191–2
 Hsiung-nu tribe, 191
 Yüeh-chih tribe, 192
 trade with Mediterranean via the Ku-shāns, 198
 Buddhist tradition, 204, 952; translations of texts, 208, 615
 relations with Iran, 537–58; cultural, 537–9, 555–8; trade, 539, 542, 547–52, 739; diplomatic, 542; merchant settlers, 270–5, 552–3; in religion, 554–5, 557
 pressure on central asia, 540–6, 616
 Chang Ch'i'en's mission, 540–2
 Li Kuang-li against the Ta-yüan, 542
 Pan Ch'ao against the Hsiung-nu, 543
 Kan Ying in Parthia, 543
 contacts with the Romans, 543–4, 550–1, 756
 renewed westward expansion, 546
 and the Turks, 617, 619–20
 and Manichaeism, 861–2, 988–90
 Chin-ch'eng, 274
 Chingiz-Khān, 473, 1217
 Chionites/Massagetae/č̥iyān/Hun, 137, 148, 467, 542, 540 n. 2
 language, 137
 treaty with Shāpūr II, 137, 211
 invade eastern frontiers of Iran, 211, 1140
 siege of Amida, 211
 in Bactria, 212
 Chishtiya-i bibištiya, 216
 Chol Huns, 766–8
 Chorasmia, *see* Khwārazm
 Chorienes, eastern Iranian chief, 183
 Chosroes, *see* Osroes
 Chosroid dynasty of Iberia, 520, 528
 chreophylact, registrar of business dealings, 716
 Christianity, Christians, 131, 368, 568, 570–1, 607–8, 752, 764, 766, 825, 857, 924–48, 1163 n. 6
 persecution under Shāpūr II, 139–40

INDEX

- Christianity (*cont.*)
 under Yazdgard I, 143–4; Council of Seleucia, 143–4
 under Bahram Gōr, 145, 485
 in southern Arabia, 157
 and Khusrau II, 171–2
 late Sasanian divisiveness, 174
 separation of Persian from Syrian, 485–6
 in Mesopotamia, 499–50
 in Armenia, 518, 520–1, 584, 586, 890;
 Christians transported, 753
 in Georgia, 520–1, 523
 Iranian–Byzantine contacts, 571–3, 583–7
 Orthodox, 573, 576, 584
 Byzantine–Sasanian edict of tolerance, 586, 890, 916, 941
 Armeno–Syrian, 586
 poll-tax, 609, 746; non-payment, 915
 and the law, 631
 and slavery, 640
 apocalyptic ideas, 833, 835
 under the Sasanians, 879–97 *passim*
 separation of Persian from western, 890,
 941–2
 expansion in Iran, 924–33
 the church and the Sasanians, 933–48
 and Manichaean doctrine, 972, 984
 enemy of Manichaeism, 987
 Sogdian writings, 1225–7
see also Monophysite Christianity, Nestorianism
 Chronos, 855
 Chu ch'ü ching sheng, marquis of An-yang, 963
 Cilicia 57, 69, 91, 482, 731
 Cimggas, 267
 Cimmerians, 505
 Cinnamus, Arsacid prince, 75
 Circesium, 164, 168, 758
 cīstay, and gnostic thought, 836, 839
 cītaris, 525
 “The Cities of Iran”, *see Shabristānā i Erānshahr*
 clans, *see* agnatic groups
 Clarus, Erucius, Roman general, 91
 Claudius, 76–7, 81
 Cleopatra, daughter of Ptolemy Philometor, 36, 67
 wife of Demetrius II, 36
 against Tryphon the usurper, 36
 marries Antiochus VII, 37
 son, Alexander, by Mark Antony, 65
 clibanarii, 561 and n. 5, 580
 Clitus, administrator in Bactria, 235
 clothing, 798, 1144
 Parthian, 91, 493; boots, 560
- Achaemenian, 103, 105
 Kushān, 199, 850
 headdress of Sasanian kings, 210, 325–7,
 803, 874–6, 883–4, 886, 1055, 1092,
 1119, 1124 and n. 4, 1125; table, 135;
 veil, 623
 of Ardashir, 392
 kulāb, 403, 707
 influence of Medes on Persian, 525
 Iranian in Chinese art, 555–6
 Uighur emperors, 620, 623
 coming of age, 643
 early Parthian ruler, 686
 royal “satrapal” headgear, 686, 697
 priestly emblems, 706, 850
 Parthian noble tiara, 728
 xod, 913
 the kamara, 918
 of Māni, 970
 on Taq-i Bustān reliefs, 1088
 as gifts to Juanšēr, 1108
 kustik, 1177–8
 coinage, 277–339, 465, 553 n. 1, 560, 686,
 697, 710, 713, 824, 866, 880, 892, 895,
 1122 n. 1
 Greek, 9, 336
 Seleucid, 11 and n. 3, 33 and n. 1
 Seleucid and Attic standard, 11, 251, 279,
 301, 328
 Indian standard, 12
 Parthian, 16, 28 n. 1, 42 n. 3, 279–98,
 303–4, 307–8, 311, 316, 329; Arsacid
 series, 29–30 and n. 3, 42, 282, 285,
 290, 325, 334, 1153
 mint at Seleucia-on-the-Tigris, 43, 283,
 719–20
 Magian influence in Babylonia, 86
 Bukhārā, 145, 235, 245
 Kushān, 202, 323, 770, 849–50, 903, 955,
 1030–1, 1125, 1259 n. 1, 1260
 Transoxiana, 233–55 *passim*
 Iranian mints, 283
 Sasanian, 297–9, 305, 322–36; design,
 323; influence on Arab and Byzantine
 coins, 323; Arabo–Sasanian, 323; coin
 portraits, 324–8; denominations and
 weights, 328–9; script and epigraphy,
 329–31; mints and monetary circulation
 331–5; coin technology and art, 335–6;
 imitated, 1125
 Persid, 299–306, 317, 727
 Byzantine, 301
 Elymaean, 306–10, 317, 1153
 Characene, 310–14, 317
 Achaemenian, 329
 Roman, 336

INDEX

- coinage (*cont.*)
 Armenian, 509, 525
 Georgian, 523
 Hephthalite, 614
 titles of Parthian, Seleucid and Graeco-Bactrian kings on, 684–5
 of Ardashir, king of Sakastān, 729
 and chronology, 780, 782–3, 785
 Bactrian, 847, 1029
 of Menander, 848
 as art; Seleucid and Parthian, 1029–31;
 Sasanian, 324, 336, 1055–6; iconography of divine kingship, 1080–1
 Colchis/Western Georgia, 238, 509, 514, 516, 520, 524
 Pompey in, 516
 becomes part of Lazica, 521
 religion in, 532–4
 collective/common ownership
 by agnatic groups, 643
 in family property, 667–8
 Mazdakite, 946, 999
 Qarmati, 1023
 Comana in Cappadocia, 107
 Comana in Pontus, 107
 coming of age, 643, 647, 897 and n. 7
 Commagene, 112–13, 491, 510, 728, 844, 903
 relationship with Rome, 114
 cultural unity with Armenia and Parthia, 114
 funeral hill of Antiochus I at Nimrūd Dāgh, 535
 ruler cult in, 841–3
 and Graeco-Iranian art, 1049
 Commagene, god, 842
 commerce, *see* trade, law of obligations
 commodities, 198, 550–1 and n. 2, 560, 594, 739, 741, 744, 746, 754–77 *passim*
see also silk, spice trade
 “Complete description of the world and its peoples”, work of the 4th century A.D., 744
 confession
 Zoroastrian, 905
 Manichaeans, 985
 Confucianism, enemy of Manichaeism, 989
 Constantina, city in Mesopotamia, 162
 Constantine, Roman emperor, 131–3, 137, 409
 accepts Christianity, 143
 Constantinople, 138, 158, 163–4, 526, 554, 584
 Sasanians and Avars invade, 169
 Coponius
 Commander of Roman garrison at Carrhae, 54
 copper, 744
 Corbulo (Gnaeus Domitius), Roman general, 81, 83, 516
 Against Parthians in Armenia, 81–6
 Corma/Lesser Zāb river, 78
 coronations, 121
 dating, 134
 coronation fires, 695
 of Ardashir II, 888–9
 Cossaei, term designating the various Zagros tribes of Māh, 752, 766
 council of nobles
 Parthian, 689
 Sasanian, 689–90, 700–8
 courier service, Persian, 75 n. 6, 564
 court of arbitration, of merchants, 675 and n. 1
 Crassus, 10, 49, 58, 61, 66, 80, 313, 561, 721
 battle of Carrhae, 10, 49–55, 483, 516;
 army, 52; weapons, 52–3; tactics, 54
 assumes his command in Syria, 49
 character, 50
 movements before battle of Carrhae, 50
 Publius his son, 54
 death, 55
 head brought to Orodes I, 56, 517
 Croesus, 481
 Cross, the true, 168, 170, 586
 Ctesias, 388–9, 470
 Ctesiphon/Tēspōn, 39, 68–9, 73–4, 90–1, 138, 162–4, 392, 472, 584, 594, 720, 866, 875, 889, 1073, 1097, 1104, 1106, 1115, 1274
 city complex Seleucia–Ctesiphon, 89, 121, 573; Christian church organisation, 586, 931–2, 948
 captured by the Romans, 90, 93–4, 128, 210, 297, 483, 490, 596
 administrative capital of the Sasanian empire, 120–1, 171, 1062
 centre of Christianity, 140
 Sasanian–Byzantine conflict, 168, 170
 Marzbāns at Khurāsān, 172
 Arab occupation, 172, 486
 Seleucid and Parthian Mesopotamian capital, 482–3
 capture by Ardashir, 484–5
 Shāpūr II defeated at, 485
 history of, 488–90; Tēspōn and variants, 488 n. 4
 Veh-Kavāt/al-Madā'in/Māhōzē, 488
 seat of Jewish exilarch, 499
 birthplace of Māni, 500
 on the Silk Road, 548
 Qatūsif/Ctesiphon, 603
 “City of Azur”? 758

INDEX

- Ctesiphon (*cont.*)
 massacre of Mazzakites, 1021–2
 centre of Parthian art, 1051
 lost mosaics and paintings, 1088
see also Tāq-i Kisrā palace
cursus publicus, 564
 Cyprianus, Magian, 828
 Cyprus, 169, 912
 Cyrenaica, 564, 912
 Cyrus of Alexandria, 942–3
 Cyropolis/Kurkath, 183
 Cyrtii (true Kurds?), 766
 Cyrus the Great, 102, 106, 303, 412 n. 4, 498,
 593, 784, 1161
 in Iranian traditional history, 380, 388–9,
 447, 460, 471; overthrows the Chorasmian state, 439
 and Mesopotamia, 481
 Cyrus the Younger, brother of Artaxerxes II, 506
dabirān/dipirān/dpywṛ/SPR, scribal class, 394,
 397, 633, 682, 724, 736–7, 1168
dād, justice, 420
 Dadarshi, 506 n. 2
Dādastān i Dēnig, *see Dātastān i dēnik*
 Dādhormizd, magupat, 896
Dādišč, 941
 synod, 931–2
daēnā, and gnostic thought, 836, 860
 Dahae/Dai/Dāhi, 75, 686, 691, 767, 769, 851
 Avestan nation, 409
 and Iranian religious development, 845
 Dahāk, *see Aži Dahāka*
 Dahan-i Ghulaman, site, 9 n. 6
 Dahrīs, 1010
dahyupadēb, monarchy, 420
 Dailam, 1015 n. 3, 1174
 Dailamān region, finds from, 1090–3, 1098,
 1103
 glassware, 1105–6
 Dair Hind, monastery, 488
dā'is, of Qarmaṭī village colonies, 1023
 Dāftī, river, 417
 Daizān b. Mu'āwiya, last ruler of Hatra, 491,
 596
 Dali, wood goddess, 533
 Dalverzin-tepe, 1143
Damāniķa, 1240
 Damascus, 100, 168, 523
Dāmdād Nask, *see Avesta*
 Dāmgān, 39
 palace at, 1069–73, 1088
see also Hecatomphylos
 Dāna, house of, 430
dānāgān, men of learning, 394
 Dandān-oilik, 269
dāng (dām(a)k), 333
 one-sixth, 503
dānišn, in Pahlavī writings, 837
 Danube, the, 509
dapirpat, 737
 Erān-dabirbad, 689
dar mint, 335
 Dārā, 139, 761–2
 fortification of the town, 151
 Persian–Byzantine conflict, 152, 155, 159,
 164, 167, 569
 surrendered to the Byzantines in payment
 for the throne, 165
 Dārā(b) I, the Great, son of Bahman, 377,
 389, 404, 410, 437, 471–3, 475
 possible link with Darius I, 472
 last of the Kayanians, 1187 n. 2
 Dārā II, the Younger, 377, 472
 Dārāb Hormazdyār
 Rivāyat, 994
 Dārābjird, 751, 1124 n. 4
 victory relief of Shāpūr I, 1082–3
Dārāb-nāma, 473, 1168
darandarzbad, scribe class in the Sasanian
 empire, 148
 Darband/Bāb al-Abwāb
 wall of, 138
 defence of, 141–2, 145, 150, 160, 175, 765
 inscription at, 683
 Dardanus, Magian, 828
 Darel, 957
 Dargman b. Ḥarshin, a Chorasmian soldier,
 181
Dar i gubārikistān, *see Dēnkard*
 Dari-Ardashir, 119
dārišn, legal use of, 656
 Darius I, Achaemenian king, son of
 Vištāspa, 24, 26, 48, 74, 389, 535, 593,
 825, 842, 1027, 1101 n. 5, 1180, 1230,
 1251
 coinage, 48, 116, 288, 295, 300, 303
 inscriptions from the Suez Canal, 181
 and the legendary Dārā I, 472
 tomb of, 494 n. 3
 seal of, 1082 n. 4
 see also Bisitūn, inscriptions of Darius
 Darius II, 304, 781
 Darius III Codomannus, 182, 508, 591, 788
 Greek mercenaries, 185
 Darius “the Mede”, son of Xerxes
 (Ahashwerosh), 460
dasākir (sing. *daskara*), estates, 490
 Dastgird, 490
Dascylion, 103–4
 Greek reliefs of Persian life, 105

INDEX

- Dašt-i Nāvur*, inscription, 201, 1257 and n. 2
dastabar, commentator, 629
dastaþarib, attorney, 651, 656, 675
 Dastagird/Dastajird al-Malik/Daskara, 121, 490, 758
 plundered by Heraclius, 170, 1108
 palace of Khusrau II, 171
dasta-karta, “hand-made”, 490
 Dastān, *see* Zāl
 Dāštayāni, 430
dastkart, royal demesne, 636, 658, 660, 702, 724, 730, 744
 Sasanian extension of, 725–6, 737
 see also dastkerty, östan
dastür, defined, 421, 1190
dātabara/dā(d)var/dātaþar, judge, 495, 633, 676–9
 \ddot{E} rānabār *dātaþarān dātaþar*, 676
 Datames, general of Artaxerxes II, 61
Dātastān i dēnik, *see* Manuščihr
Dātastān-nāmak, 629
dātastān pat var, trial by ordeal, 679
 Dātfarrukh, magupat, 733
 Dāt-Gušnasp, of the Šahr-Zapalakān family, 630
 Daθuš/Dadv/Dai, Creator, 804, 868, 901
 Dātohrinazd, Fārs magupat, 733
dāt paytāk kātan, declaration of conveyance, 658
 Dausar, élite Ḥira force, 600
David of Sasoun, Armenian epic, 534
da'wa, missionary propaganda, 1002, 1014, 1015, 1022
dāyak/dayeak, “fosterer”, 1268, 1278
 days
 names, 785, 804, 868; table, 814–15
 Deccan, 208
 King of the, 757
dēb/QRYT', villages, 727
De Hebdomadibus
 relation to Iranian thought, 1193
 Deh-i Nau valley mill, 752
dehkān/dehkānīb/al-dahqana/dehgān, 382, 420
 defined, 154
dekaprotoi, city official, 741
 Delilius, 62
 Delphi, 105
 Demāvand, Mount, 351, 357, 372, 427
 Demetias, in Arachosia, 823
 Demetrianus/Demetrius, Christian bishop of Antioch, 126, 929
 Demetrius I, Seleucid king, 33–4
 overthrows Mithradates I, 33
 coinage, 33, 240
 Demetrius II, 6, 34–6, 307
 control of the Seleucid kingdom, 34
 wife Cleopatra, 36
 Demetrius III Eucaerus, 42
 coinage, 42
 Demetrius I/Dharmamitra, Bactrian Greek king, son of Euthydemus, 188
 Indian conquests, 188–9, 952
 against Eucratides, 189
 Demetrius Poliorcetes, son of Antigonus the One-eyed, 824
 Demodamas, Seleucid general, 823
 in Transoxiana, 237
 demons/*dēvs*, 802, 1173
 in Iranian common beliefs, 347–9, 354
 in Iranian myth and legend, 367–461
 passim
 Yazidis, devil-worshippers, 501
 Armenian and Georgian, 535–6
 and Magians, 830–1
 worship prohibited, 898
 magical bowls and Jews, 920
 Manichaeans Evil Principle, 973; Archons, 977–9
 graba-, 1234
 see also Drug, etc.
 Dēn, 859, 878, 883
 in Manichaeism, 986
 Dēnabārān, 767
 Dēnak, sister and wife of Ardashir I, 644, 707, 712
 seal of, 1099
 Dēnak, wife of the king of Mesene, 708
 Dēnak, wife of Sāsān, founder of the Sasanian dynasty, 713
 Denau, 249
 Dēnāvariya, 861
Dēnkard, 584, 691, 747, 878–9, 935, 1170–6, 1186
 source for Iranian traditional history, 364, 396, 417–71 *passim*
Cbibrdād Nask, 415–35 *passim*
Sūdgar Nask, 364, 415, 445, 1175, 1195
Varshmānsar Nask, 416, 466, 1175
Vishṭāsp Sāst, 467
 Babylonian astronomy in, 501
 against foreign healers, 571
 foreign science in, 583
 and law, 587, 628–9, 631
 Dar i guharikistān, on barter, 672
 on religious orthodoxy, 893–5
 prohibition of *da'ea*-worship, 898
 and the eye of the soul, 982
 and the *Barij/Breb Nask*, 1160, 1180–1
 and the *Bak Nask*, 1172, 1175
 legend of Zoroaster, 1172–5
 and the *Spand Nask*, 1172, 1195
 Books VIII and IX, 1175–6
Nikādām Nask, 1176; *Patkār-ratistān*, *Zahmīstān*, *Rēsistān*, *Hamēmaristān*, 1176

INDEX

- Dēnkard* (cont.)
Dužd-sar vijat, 1176
Pāčag Nask, 1178
 Book VI as *andarz*, 1181–2
 Derbikes, 829
 Dērist-dēnān, doctrine of Bundos, 995
dēsanā, confession, profession, 1239
deva/daēva/daiva, category of gods, 344, 423,
 436, 798, 1242
 the *daēvas*, 347–9
 in Armenia and Georgia, 535
 prohibition of worship of, 898
 Devaprajña, Khotanese Buddhist missionary, 963
 Devidarman, King, 1185
 Devil's Dung, 564
 Dēv-i Safid, the White Demon, 349, 374,
 446
dēvs, see demons
dēwāstīc, defined, 615
 Dēwāstic, 1228
Dhaqūliyya, name given to extremist Shi'is,
 1001
dbarma-mahāmātra, Buddhist officials, 951
Dharmapada, Gāndhāri Buddhist text, 959,
 1234
Dhikr akhbār Iṣhābān, see Abu Nu'aim
dkb̄štr, 724
Dhu'l-aktāf, 603
Dhū Nuwās, 157, 605
Dhū Qār, battle, 167, 608
Dhū Raidān, 605
 Diadochi, 302, 822, 1031
 Dihistan 27
 Dilberjin, inscriptions, 1256
 Dīnawārī, historian, 363, 440, 449, 1280
Akkbār al-ṭiwāl, 361
 Dindān, Bātīni activist, 1015
 Diocletian, Roman emperor, 129–33, 589,
 710
 military defences against the Sasanians,
 137
 reform of taxes, 153, 587, 746
 edict against the Manichees, 986–7
 Diodotids, of Bactria, 846
 Diodotus I Theodosius, king of Bactria,
 188, 237, 686, 847
 governor in Seleucid kingdom, 28
 founder of the Bactrian kingdom, 187
 coinage, 187, 240, 279
 Diodotus II, 847
 Dionysius, 312
 Dionysos, 829
dipi-, defined, 494, 495
dipi'rān, see *dabirān*
dip i pat atarākāyib, certificate of dis-
 obeyance, 648
dirham, Arab currency, 323
divān i kartakān, office for religious institu-
 tions, 664
divān i ősāndārib, department managing the
 Sasanian royal lands, 660, 669, 733
divān-pān, officer in charge of court records,
 678
 Divāshīch, king of Sughd, 256, 259–60,
 1145
 divorce, 647–9
 Diyālā river, 131, 160
 Diyārbakr, 46–7
dizbad/dizpat, fortress commander, satrap,
 726, 744, 1156, 1263
 Dizful bridge, 754
Diz Rō'in, 449
dlt/brypty, palace doorkeeper, 711
dlyk'n slđ'l/drykns'rr, head of courtiers, 710–
 11
dō bun, Manichaean “Two Principles”, 973
Doctrina Addai, see Addai
Doctrina Apostolorum, 1227
 “Dolomites”, 766–7
 domes
 Sasanian domed hall, 1058–9
 the heavenly dome at Tāq-i Bustām, 1087
 and n. 6
 Domitian, Roman commander, 87
 Domitian of Melitene, bishop, 585
 Domoko/Dumaqu, 269
 dowry, 648, 665, 668, 1190
 from public funds, 1000
dpywr, see *dabirān*
draconarii, legionary in charge of the dragon
 ensign, 562
Drakht i asūrig “The Babylonian Tree”, 456,
 755, 1160–1, 1267
 Drangiana/Zarang, 182, 310, 433, 455, 823
 Saka invasion of Bactria, 193
 routes, 774
 Saka name, 1230
 see also Sarangians
 Dribices, 766
drigu, 1182
drōn, sacred cake, 1171, 1176, 1178
 Drug/The Lie, 347–8, 356, 414, 425, 430,
 440
 Druzes, of Lebanon, 991, 1000 n. 3, 1018 n. 2
druzhes, harmful spirits, 536
 Drvāspā, goddess of horses, 423, 466, 904
dsikrī, appanage, 701, 725, 727, 737
d'twbł/d'tvr/d'tbr, judge, 682, 724, 736
dub, clay tablet, 495
 Dura-Europos, 66, 77, 89, 498, 844, 927
 captured by Trajan, 89
 Roman evacuation, 91
 recaptured by Romans, 93

INDEX

- Dura-Europos (*cont.*)
 Roman frontier town, 94
 Sasanian–Roman conflict, 125–6
 Mithraeum at, 566–7, 871
 parchments from, 627, 681, 724, 1153;
 loan-contract, 674, 717; on taxation,
 722; ostraka from, 681, 1213; docu-
 ments, 1211–12; Dura-parchment 1263;
 Parthian script on finds, 1153–4
 synagogue; inscription, 683; graffiti, 711,
 723; frescoes, 920, 1052–3
 Parthian graffiti, 1154
 under the Parthians, 715–18
 under the Sasanians, 723–4
 frontality in monuments, 1051
durāsa drink, 1238
dūtak, use defined, 651
 “The Duties of a Schoolboy”, 1187
duxtdāt, son of the epikleros, 653
duzakhw, hell, 357
dvija, *dvijāti*, Old Indian title, 643 n. 1
 Dvin, near present Erevan, 159, 742–3
 site of a fire temple, 159
 chief town of Byzantine Armenia, 168
 remains Iranian, 522
 Dyrrachium 85
dyūva-/dava-, demon, 1242
Dyzpīkān/Dizpatakān, derivation of name,
 645
 Dzovasar, 534
*dz*y, fortress, 699
- Ecbatana/Agmatana, modern Hamadān, 4,
 6, 31, 85, 96, 100–2, 482–4
 Seleucid headquarters in Media, 31
 Epiphania under Antiochus IV, 32
 mint, 33, 49, 279, 281, 283, 285, 288, 292
 Hamadān, 40, 121, 725, 767; stone lion,
 1037
 Sasanian summer capital, 121
 eastern campaign of Antiochus III, 187
 on the Silk Road, 548
 temple at, 871
ecclesia, city elected senate, 719
 Edessa, 77, 82, 88, 92, 93, 95, 130, 484, 485,
 569, 595, 701, 715, 926
 captured by Romans, 91, 130
 governed by Parthamaspates, 93
 besieged by Sasanians, 126, 155–6;
 Byzantines, 167
 School of the Persians closed, 573, 944
 court procedure and titles, 709
 origin of “Hymn of the Pearl”? 1162
 Abgar legend of, 1264
 see also Osroene
 “Edessa, Chronicle of”, 926, 928, 1264, 1276
- education, 397, 1176, 1184
 and Iranian national history, 393–400
 of princes, 381, 407
 gastronomy in Persian, 564
 religious, 897
 “The Duties of a Schoolboy”, 1187
 Egypt, 181, 365, 412, 497, 510, 550, 562, 564,
 593, 616, 821, 831, 837, 838, 840, 912
 War with Seleucid empire, 3
 defeat by Antiochus III, 4
 coinage, 7
 Lagids in Egypt, 11
 Ptolemy Philometor, 34–6
 Cleopatra, 36
 Ptolemy XI Auletes, 49
 Egyptian month, 119
 rebel Byzantines take control, 168
 Persian troops enter, 169–70, 174, 486
 Ptolemy creates a Greek kingdom in, 509
 time-reckoning in, 779–85 *passim*, 790
 Manichaeism in, 986–7
ēbrpat, *ērpat*, of the fourth estate, 633, 1171
 a priest of the second rank, 878
 meaning of the term, 880
 in the *Dēnkhārd*, 1176, 1181–2
ēbrpatān-ēbrpat, 891
 defined, 633
 Elam, Susan satrapy, 482, 484, 494, 784
 El-Amarna tablet, 412
 Elamites, 498, 784
 rock-reliefs, 1078
 Elazig, 84
 Eleazar b. Pedat, 919
 Elegia, 88, 93
 Elephantine documents, 181, 301, 497, 1180
 “Wisdom of Ahiqar”, 1180
 elephants, 5, 136, 410, 765, 824
 the year of the elephant, 158, 606
 Euthydemus treaty with Antiochus III,
 188
 Zāl’s, 453
 god of Alexandria-Kapisa, 847
 Elkesaites, 860, 864, 966
 Elmali, plain, 105 n. 1
 Elymais/Elam, Elymaeans, 32, 35, 118, 701,
 707, 730, 735, 751, 753
 mint, 282
 chronological table of kings, 315
 sites and sculptures, 1042–4
 see also coinage
 Emesa, 595, 728
 Endere, 209, 265
 endowments, pious and religious, 661–5,
 793, 807, 904
 Enius
 Parthian governor of Babylonia, 37

INDEX

- Enoch, the Book of, 834
 ensign, Parthian dragon, 562
 entertainment
 hunting, 103, 382, 408
 at coronations, 134
 lūlis, 145
 polo, 381, 407
 chess, 382, 497, 1185
 backgammon/nard, 382, 497, 1185
 literature as, 396, 400–1, 497
 tournament, 407
 feasting, 408
 theatre, 492, 517
 falconry, 497
 export of entertainers, 551
 public, at festivals, 792
 entertainers at court, 1006–7 and n. 1
 women minstrels and dancing girls, 1158
 see also *gōsān*
ēn xvāstak tō xvēš hēš bavēt, gift transfer formula, 659
epagomenai, in time-reckoning, 779, 785 n. 2, 787, 788–9, 812
 eparchies, Seleucid administrative divisions, 726
 Ephesus, Robber Council of, 943
epistates, state-appointed city head, 717
 Ēraj, youngest son of Frēdōn, 372–3, 400, 404, 409, 428
 derivation of name, 433
 Ērān ud Anērān, 411, 731
 Ērān Vēj, see Airyanem Vaējah
 Erevan, 79
 Ergeli, 103
 Erh-shih, capital of Prince Mu-kua, 542
 Erindes/Charindas river, 76 and n. 5
eristavis, Georgian feudal office, 514, 531
 Eros, 1100
Erpatištān, see Avesta
 Erzurum 82, 88, 513
 É-sagila, 482
 Esarhaddon, 24, n. 1
espasag, a category of the Manichaean elect, 986
 Espendadates, see Isfandiyār
 Esther, 498
 Book of, 725
 Ethiopia, 831
 in south Arabia, 156–7, 605–7
 Etzin-gol, 549
 Eucratideia, 823
 Eucratides, conqueror of Bactria, 32–3, 239, 952
 defeat of Demetrius I of Bactria, 189
 house of, 189, 848
 coin imitations, 233, 240, 245
 Eucratides II, 189
 Euhemerus, *see* Himerus
 Eulaos river, 310, 753
 Eumenes
 battle with Antigonus, 96, 185
 eunuch, title of, 713
 Euphrates river, 58, 69–71, 74, 83, 88–90, 94, 114, 138, 153, 168, 481, 483, 499, 757
 boundary between Parthia and Rome, 47, 55
 Mark Antony's invasion of Parthia, 58–9
 canals, 69–71; connecting to the Tigris, 121, 719
 Arab migration along, 483
 the Euphrates road, 739
 Europos, *see* Ray
 Eusebeia/Mazaca-Tyana, 112
 Euthydemia, in the Punjab, 823
 Euthydemid princes, 32, 189
 in Bactria, 189, 846, 848
 table, 218
 Euthydemus I, Indo-Greek ruler of Bactria, 187, 239, 549, 847
 against Antiochus III, 187–8
 coin imitations, 233, 240
 Euthydemus II, 189
ēvakēn, 1189
Evangelion, *see* Māni
 exilarch/rēs gālūtā, 144, 499, 728
 established in Babylonia, 917–18
 Eznik of Kolb, 934, 938, 1275
 Refutation of the Sects, 521 n. 1
 Ezra, 498
 Faghfür of China, 432
fahm, understanding, 1006
 Fa-hsien, Chinese pilgrim, 957–8, 962
 Failaka, in the Persian Gulf, 866, 1032, 1047
 Fallūja, “the Canal Regulator”, 69–71.
 family, 641–6 *passim*
 and the Mazdakite movement, 892, 999–1000
 vēb-dēn families, 897
 see also family law, property law, marriage etc.
 family law, 646–55, 690
 marriage, 631, 646–50, 674; *pātixšāyib*, 646–9, 652; divorce, 647–9 *passim*; levirate, 649, 653; *epikleros*-daughter, 649, 653; temporary, 650
 guardianship, 643–50 *passim*, 650–1
 succession, 643, 651–5; heirs and successors, 653–4
 and verification of the legality of the king's will, 690

INDEX

- family law (*cont.*)
 and the royal succession, 690, 693
 in “Contract of the Master of the House”, 1190
 famine, 147, 399, 408, 891, 1118
 Farangis, wife of Siyāvush, 389, 464
Farāsiyāb, *see Afrāsiyāb*
Farēdōn, 351, 357
 Farghāna, 192, 240, 242, 257, 259, 260, 543,
 548, 852
 Ta-yüan? 541
 subject to China, 546; Ning Yüan, 546
 cultural affinity with Sogdiana, 1141
 under the Hepthalites, 1144
Farhād/Phraates, legendary warrior, 459,
 1156
Farīburz, uncle of Kai Khusrau, 461
Faridūn, 654
Farnbag, called Dātakih, 1191
Farnbāy/Ātur Farnbag, fire-temple, 641,
 903, 1178
farr/farrab, *see xvarənah*
Farraxvart ī Vahramān, *see Mātakdān ī
 hāzār dāstān*
Farrekāns, noble family, 702, 705
Farrukhān, an Arsacid prince, 380
Farshidvard/Frašamvarəta, son of Gushtāsp,
 415
Farsman, King, 515
Fārs-nāma, *see Ibn al-Balkhi*
Farvardin Yasht, *see Yashts*
Fāṣa, 402, 995
fath, in Bātīni myth, 1016
Fāṭima, daughter of Abū Muslim, 1008,
 1010
 a Mazdakite saint, 1014
Faustus of Buzanda, Armenian chronicler,
 524
 festival(s), 502, 825, 835, 880
 Zoroastrian, 442, 792–815; halls, 502,
 793; obligatory, 793–800; to individual
 yazads, 801–3; name-day, 804; and
 calendar changes, 805–11; table of
 Sasanian festivals, 813
 Manichaean Bema, 985–6
see also Mihragān, Nō Rōz, Sada
 feudalism, 366, 402, 589, 592, 1264, 1279
 in Parthia, Armenia, Iberia, 128–31
 aspects in Sogdian painting, 1131–4
Fibrīst, *see* Ibn al-Nadīm
Firās(i)yāt, *see Afrāsiyāb*
Firdausi, author of the *Shāh-nāma*, 51 and
 n. 1, 117, 134, 165, 214, 576, 578, 579,
 582, 585, 799, 1134, 1156–8, 1167, 1279
 Rustam, 193 and n. 2, 453, 456–7
xvarənah, 345
- Simurgh, 346
 demons, 348–9
 creation, 353
 as source for traditional history, myth and
 legend, 360–1, 362–477 *passim*
 Turanians mistakenly equated with
 Turks, 429, 613
Naudhar, 435
 and the prose *Shāh-nāma*, 456
 medieval Georgian translations of, 526–7
 and Khusrau II’s victory over Bahrām
 Chōbīn, 591
 the Faridūn-cycle, 654
 source on Mazdak, 994, 999, 1013
 dialogue between Mazdak and Kavād,
 1020
 and the Panjikent murals, 1146–7
 use of Pahlavi texts, 1185
 and the *Kārnāmag ī Ardasbir*, 1187
 fire, 131, 424, 534, 846, 914
 fire ritual appears, 101; illustrated, 103;
 legitimized, 827
 renewed each royal accession, 118, 695–6,
 872, 875
 altars on Sasanian coins, 327–8, 876
 in Iranian creation beliefs, 350, 353, 354–5
 discovered by Höshang, 422; com-
 memorated at Sada, 371, 801
 Turkish cult, 621
 and Nō Rōz, 797; Sada, 800–1
 sacred flame of the Dahae, 845
 tribal fire-cult, 852
 Mithra’s universal fire, 856
 in Zoroastrianism, 866–906 *passim*
 cult in Persis, 868–9
 rites in Asia Minor, 872
 cult under the Sasanians, 874–97 *passim*
 fires and priests, 904–6
 two kinds of rites, 905–6
 in Mazdean ethics, 1180
 and Keresāsp, 1186
 in Manichaean poetic symbolism, 1203
 and n. 3
see also fire temples
- Fire, 353, 357, 430, 640, 891
 Agni, 444
 Adur, 804
see also Burzēn-mihr
- Firēdūn*, *see Frēdōn*
- fire-temples
 destroyed in Armenia, 149
 of Gushnasp at Shiz, 172, 895, 999
 at Surkh Kotal, 204
 and Armenian and Georgian church
 design, 532, 533 fig. 2
 as slave-owners, 635, 640

INDEX

- fire-temples (*cont.*)
 and conditional possession, 660
 endowments, 661–5 *passim*; of Mihr Narseh, 662; Shāpūr I, 662, 708
 coronation foundations, 695–6
 Sasanian dynastic temple at Stakhr, 706, 751, 875, 882, 884, 897, 903
 Sasanian archives of, 727
 judicial proceedings and treasury, 733–4
 earliest Iranian, 867 n. 7
 tower-temples, altars, 868–9
 non-Zoroastrian, 870
 death for destruction of, 889
 Varhrān/Bahrām, 903, 906
 ritual, 904–6
 no archaeological evidence, 904
 abolished by Mazdak, 999
ātashgāh and *chahār-tāq*, 1074
see also fire, hierodoulooi
- Firūz, son of Yazdgard III, *see* Pērōz
- Firuzābād/Gör/Gabra, 96, 628, 630, 727, 732, 751
 bridge and inscription of Mihr-Narseh, 661–2, 682, 1209; temples, 662, 891
- Ardashīr-Khwarra, 723, 891
 Ardashīr's city and palace, 1055, 1058–62;
 victory relief, 1078–9; “investiture” relief, 1079–80 and n. 3
- Firuzshāh, 473
- Firuzshāb-nāma, 473, 1168
- Fish-eaters, 777
- Flavia, Prima, 110
- food, cooking, 503
 Persian, 564–6
 for Nō Rōz, 798
 dietary rules, 980, 985, 1222
 talking while eating, 1177
- Forat, 314
- Fradaxšti, an Immortal, 415
- Frāhang-i Ōīm, 1177
- framān, judicial order, 678
- framān-burtārih, legal description of wife's status, 647
- framātār/framadbār/prmt'r/prmtr/ἐπιτρόπος, prime minister, 448, 708, 736–7
see also vuzurk-framatār
- Frayrasyan, *see* Afrāsiyāb
- Frašamvarəta/Farshidvard, son of Gushtāsp, 415
- fraše(a)gird, in Manichaeism, 859
- frašō. kārəta/frashagird/fraškart, the Renovation, 356, 415, 1194
- Frāsyāv/Frāsyāk, *see* Afrāsiyāb
- Frātadāra-temple, Persepolis, 869
- *Fratarāka, 833, 846
- Fravākēn, 417, 421
- Fravarānē, 347
- Fravardīgān, festival, 793, 797 and n. 4
 and calendar changes, 805–11 *passim*
- fravartāk, defined, 530
- fravaši/prvý, as name of a vineyard, 694
- fravaši, 344, 347, 355, 368, 395, 398, 414–51
passim, 471, 832
 and Kayanians, 462
 of women, 465
 δαιμῶν, 695 and n. 2
 Fravardin named after, 785
 associated festivals, 795–7, 806, 811
- Frayrasyan, *see* Afrāsiyāb
- frazānagīb, in Pahlavī writings, 837
- Frazdān/Frazdānu, Lake, 355, 366, 440
- Frēdōn/Farēdōn/Thraētaona/ Firēdūn, 356, 359, 367, 382, 383, 385, 400, 404, 409, 413–16, 425, 427–9, 431–5, 447, 463
 last world-king, beginning of Irano-Turanian feuds, 372–3
 as Indo-Iranian myth, 427–8
 and the Sada and Mihragān festivals, 801–2, 807
- frēstak, apostle, 984
- Friapatak, *see* Priapatius
- fryapatikān, as name of a vineyard, 694
- Fu-hu-man/Varkhūmān, governor general of Sughd, 259
- funduq, 566
- Furūd, 461
- Gabinius
 Roman proconsul of Syria, 49
 aids Mithradates III, 49
- Gabriel, doctor at the court of Khusrau II, 172, 946
- Gabu, 725
- gāb, throne, 707, 986
- gāhāmbārs, Zoroastrian high festivals, 793–800, 801, 1178
 and calendar changes, 805–11 *passim*
- Gāh-nāmak, charters of ranks, 393, 645 and n. 1, 703
- Gaim, Georgian god, 534
- Galatia(ns), 509, 831
- Galen of Pergamum, physician
 smallpox epidemic, 94
- Galerius, Roman general, 130
- Galli of Cybele, the, 839
- Gallipoli peninsula, 509
- Gallus, Flavius, Roman officer under Mark Antony, 62
- Gandareva, giant monster, 416, 429
- Gandhāra, 193, 199, 555
 chronology of the Kushān rulers, 201

INDEX

- Gandhāra (*cont.*)
 Gandhāran art, 206, 208–9, 555, 849, 955–6
 Sasanian governors, 209
 Vaṣkeraṭa region? 430, 438
 under the Achaemenians and Alexander, 949
 and Buddhism, 951, 957
 Bactrian rule, 952
Gāndhāri Dharmapada, 209
Gāṇḍisotra, Buddhist writing, 205
 Ganges river, 198
ganzabara/ganjūr, master of the treasury, 495, 711, 724
 Ganzak, Sasanian sanctuary, 169, 592, 762
 Garamig ud Nōdardashīragān, province, 754, 760–1
 Gardiz, 189–90
 mint, 191
 capital of the Zābulite kings, 214
 Gardizi, author of the *Zain al-akbār*, 363, 471, 472
 Gareus, a god, 492
 Garni, archaeological site, 79
garōdman, highest heaven, 357
 Garry-Kārīz, 241
 Garsēvaz, 442–3, 448
Gar-sbāb, 420
 Garshāsp, *see* Karshāsp
Garshāsp-nāma, 432
 Gāthās, 347–8, 356, 394, 423, 439, 463, 465, 805, 1172, 1173, 1249
 prayer, 357
 dating, 412
 use of word *kavi*, 436–7
 and Gushtāsp, 466
 translations, 1171
 and the *Bak Nask*, 1172, 1175; *Sūtkar Nask*, *Varītmān Nask*, 1175
gati, Buddhist rebirths, 619
 Gatsi, Georgian god, 534
 Gaugamela/Arbela, battle, 107, 182, 508
 Gaul, 94
 Gaumāta, 1078, 1082
gāv, cow, bull, 429, 443
Gava, 442
 Gayōmard/Gayō.marətan/Kayōmarth, 859, 899, 977
 in Iranian common beliefs, 351–7 *passim*
 in Iranian traditional history, 360–70
 passim, 402, 404, 414, 421–34 *passim*; chronology, 383, 384; prototype of man, 416–20
 Gaždaham, Iranian general, 464
 Gehmurd/Adam, 859, 979–80
 Gēls, 766
 genarch, 717
 Geniva, 919
 geography, 576
 Parthia, 24–7
 kingdom of Mithradates, 35
 legendary Iranian, 350–2; Kayanian, 438–40
 Greater and Lesser Armenia, 510
 Iran and non-Iran, 731
 the Sasanian state, 747–77
 see also roads
 George, commander of the Byzantine eastern forces, 166
 George, Saint, also known as *Tetri Giorgi*, 534
 Georgia, 127, 141, 148, 152, 506, 505–36 *passim*, 736, 1151
 Persian occupation, 152
 Persian-Byzantine conflict, 163, 173, 523
 political contacts with Iran, 514–15, 520–1, 523; similarities in social structure, 525, 527–31
 Christianity, 520, 523; persecution, 521
 personal names, 526–7
 Iranian literature popular, 526–7
 influence of Iranian art, 532; religion, 532–6 *passim*
 see also Colchis, Iberia, Lazica
 Germanicus, Roman general, 69, 313
 Gerrha/Hajar, port of, 593, 601, 756–7
 beds of pearls, 757
 Sasanian province, 1024
gētīg, 354, 386, 417, 977, 1191–2
 dualism of *mēnōg* and, 837, 859
 Gēv, legendary hero, 357, 376, 400–2, 452, 458 and n. 4, 459, 461
 historical relationship to Gotarzes I or II, 44, 78, 460, 691
 and Kai Khusrav, 375, 460
 representing Wēw, 1156 n. 6
 ghaiba, occultation, 1001
 Ghassānids, 488, 597, 760
 enemy of Sasanians and Lakhmids, 596, 600, 606–7
 Ghazna, 214, 775, 957
 Ghilzai, 217
ghulāt, extremist Shi‘is, 1001–2
 Ghūrak, king of Samarkandian Sughd, 256, 259
 Ghūram, sovereign of Akharūn and Shūmān, 260
Gburak akbār mulūk al-Furs, *see* Thā‘alibī
 Gilān, on the Caspian coast, 82, 130, 765
 “Gilān king”, 121, 126
 subdued, 123
 support for Hormizd, 128
 see also Gēls
 Gilgamesh, 427, 497

INDEX

- Gilgit/Gidagitta, 1239
Gil-shāb, 420
 Gindarus, 58
giristan-i mugbān, *see* Magi
 Giyu/Lao-shang, son of Maotun, 192
 glassware, 198, 550–1, 581
 Sasanian, 1104–6
glstpt, palace commissary, 711
 glyptic art, 1098–1102
 gnosis, 858, 860, 863, 980
 origins of, 836–40
gnzwbr, treasurer, 495, 711
gō, *gav*, *see* *gāv*
 Göčihr the Bázrangid, 874
 Gödarz, legendary hero, 375–6, 400, 402,
 452, 454–5, 461, 476
 identified with Gotarzes I or II, 44, 459
 and the sons of Vēsa, 443
 house of, 457–60
 Parthian name 687, 1156
 Gödarz II, *see* Gotarzes II
 gods
 in Seleucid Iran, 14, 17
 hunter-god, 77
 in Iranian Asia Minor, 100–1
 in Cappadocia, 109–10
 in Commagene, 113
 Indo-Iranian and Zoroastrian, 343–4
 Indo-Aryan, 412
 Kayanian, 462
 in Mesopotamia, 498
 syncretism of Greek and oriental, 532–5
 passim, 823–5, 829, 867, 869; in Com-
 magene, 842, 867
 of Georgia, 532–4
 of Armenia, 534–5
 of the Kök-Türks, 617
 in Dura-Europos, 716
 Greek, on coins, 848
 Hindu, on Kushān coins, 850
 major Zoroastrian, 902–4
 in Manichaeism, 973–82 *passim*; identifica-
 tion with Zoroastrian, 1199
 deification of kings, *see* kingship
 see also named gods
 Gōgušasp, 1171, 1177
gōbar, descent, 406
gōbr, agnatic group, 642
 Gōlarz, 460
 Golden Fleece, 521
gōmēzishn, 354
 Gondophares / Gundophares / Gundofarr,
 Indo-Parthian emperor, 455–6, 953,
 1030, 1264
 conqueror of Taxila, 51
 of the house of Suren, 51
 accession, 197
 chronology of the Kushān rulers, 202
 Gōpat, Gōpat-shāh, 442
 Gōr, *see* Firuzabād
 Gordian, Roman emperor, 125, 577, 759
 Gordian III, 322, 1083 and n. 1, 1208
 battle of Meshik, 519
 Gordyaei/Carduchi, 766
 Gordyene, 88, 701
 Gōrig/Gūrān, 766
 Gorneae, 79
gōsān, 23 n. 5, 536, 712, 1167
 role in society, 1155
gōtpand, 354
gōtarzakān, as name of a vineyard, 694
 Gotarzes I, Arsacid king, 30, 39, 51, 285–6,
 455, 1262
 in the Bisitūn inscriptions, 41–3 *passim*, 78
 coinage, 42 n. 3, 43 and n. 5, 47
 genealogy, 687–8
 paš rūvan vineyard, 694
 Gotarzes/Godarz II, son of Artabanus III,
 75–9, 704, 1262
 identified with the mythical Gödarz? 44,
 459
 his rock-sculpture at Bisitūn? 44, 78, 458,
 691
 seizes and gives up the throne, 75–6
 defeats Meherdates, 76–8
 death, 79
 coinage 294
 from an Arsacid collateral line? 691 and
 n. 3
 Goths, 138
gotra/laukīka gotra, and agnatic group
 organization, 642
Gōwišn ig Griw Zindag, *Gōwišn ig Griw Rōšn*,
 1203
 Graeco-Bactrian kings, *see* Indo-Bactrian
 kings
 grain
 hoarding, 399
 supplier of, city elective office, 722
 rations, 724
 Granicus river, 107
 Greece, 181, 509
 Seleucid dependence on, 4
 Avar devastation, 169
 Mithraism in, 854
 Greeks in the Iranian empire, 79, 501
 in Seleucid Iran, 4–18 *passim*; Iranian-
 Greek relations, 12–18, 111
 language, 17, 1029
 of Babylonia, 34–5
 Bactrian settlements; destroyed, 38;
 established, 188–9, 508; military, 185;
 mutinies, 185, 236
 in Seleucia, 72–3, 719

INDEX

- Greeks (*cont.*)
 in Asia Minor, 101–6
 cities in Pontus, 111
 scholars, 161
 colonization of Sogdiana, 185
 and Iranian legend, 377, 468, 470, 472
 in Armenia and Georgia, 514, 526
 workmen of Shāpūr I, 570, 591
 in Dura-Europos, 716
 deported Christians, 929
 in Indian territory, 950–1; Yonas, 951
see also Bactria, Hellenism, *polis*, Seleucid empire
 Gregory, Saint, the Illuminator, 518
 Gregory the Great, 385
 Grigor, Synod of, 946
 Grigōr, Christian commander, 934
 Grumbates, king of the Chionites, 211
 Guaram, Iberian prince, 523
 guardianship, *see* family law
 Guarmids, of Iberia, 528
 Gubaz II of Lazica, 521
 Gudman, 725
guharēn i rāst, equivalent exchange, 672
guharik, *guharēn*, exchange agreement, 672
 Gujarat
 Pārsī community, 1169
gumārtak, procedure for guardianship, 650
 Gundad-i Qābūs, 214
 Gundeshāpūr / Beth Lapat / Veh Antiok
 Shāpūr, 121, 126, 500, 724, 754, 932
 settlement of Roman prisoners, 131;
 Syrians, 570
 bishopric, 139, 754
 university, 161, 486; medical school, 573;
 Christian school, 583
 synod, 174, 944
 prison, 500, 858
 names, 725, 754
 Gundophares, *see* Gondophares
 Gupta empire, 214, 247
 Gürān, *see* Görig
 Gurdāfrid, daughter of Gaždaham, 464
 Gurdöya, sister and wife of Bahrām Chōbin, 383, 404
 Gurgān, *see* Hyrcania
 Gurgenes, king of Georgia, 152
Gurupāñcāśika, Buddhist writing, 205
 gurz, mace, 134
 gusan, Armenian, 536, 1155
 see also gōsān
 Gushnasp, Fire of, *see* fire temples
 Gushtāsp/Vištāspa, 355–6, 698, 828, 1155
 in traditional history and myth, 376–7,
 400–65 *passim*, 466–9, 470, 471
 as Wu-se-to-hsi, 557
 in the *Ayādgār i Zarērān*, 1167
 in the *Dēnkard* legend of Zoroaster, 1173
 Gušnasp/Jashnasf, ruler of Tabaristan, 689, 731, 765
 Gustahm, son of Naudhar, 345, 376, 413,
 444, 460
 Güyüm, 129
 Gyaur Kala, near Bairam ‘Ali, stūpa at, 957
gznbr, *see* *ganzabara*
 GZYR(‘)ān, warders or “policemen”, 678
 Habakkuk, 1174
hadā, envoys, 1241
badar, settled population, 491, 594
 Hādassah, 498
 Hadda, 206, 956
 Hades, 829–30
hadīth, 370
Hadokht Nask, 837, 981
 Hadramaut, 602, 604
 Hadrian, successor to Emperor Trajan, 91,
 93, 297
 Haftavān Tepe, 1057
Haft Khwān, *see* Isfandiyār, Rustam
 Haftvād/Haftānbukht/Haftovāt, 348, 428,
 1188
 Haiqar, 497
hair, enclosure, 597
Hai yao pēn ts’ao, 553
 Hajar, *see* Gerrha
 Hājjīābād, inscription of Shāpūr I, 682, 1165
 categories of nobility in, 698
 text reproduced at Tang-i Burāq, 1208–9
 Hala, 721
 Halibān, 606
 Halibiya, 88
 Halima, the Day of, 607
 Halys river, 107
 Hamadān, *see* Ecbatana
hamārkari/bistr ’bmrkr, 495, 683, 736, 738
 functions, 726, 733–4
 shabrbamārkāt, 737
 seals on merchandise, 742–3
hamārkar i vāspubrakān, finance official, 669
 Hānārz, Persian commander, 608
Hamaspathermaēdaya, one of the gāhāmbārs,
 795–7
 and calendar changes, 805–11 *passim*
 Hamat, 595
 Hāmāvarān, *see* Himyar
 Hamazasp, puppet ruler in Iberia, 519
 Hamazasp/Amazaspes II, 520
hambāyib, co-partnership contracts, 671, 743
 Hamdān Qarmāt
 Qarmati village colonies, 1003, 1023
hamēmālīh, *hamēmārib*, judicial process, 677

INDEX

- hamkār*, helper, 798
hammana, 870
hamnāfān, 402, 634
 near agnates, 644
hamōzāg, a category of the Manichaean elect, 986
bāmūn, plain, 776
hamxvāstakīh, joint liability, 671
 Hamza İsfahānī, 363, 383–4, 403–4, 435, 465, 471–2, 1280
 author of *Sini mulük al-ard wa'l-anbiyā'*, 362
 on Sasanian portraits, 392
 on Gayōmard and the first couple, 419–20
 on the Arsacid period, 473, 476
 on the İsfahān Jews, 915
 Han, dynasty, the Later, 175
 Hananiah, 917
 Hanbū-Shāpūr/Janbsābūr, 758
bandōxt i xvēš, category of private property, 659, 665, 669
 Hang-chou, 275
 Hanina b. Hama, 918
 Hanisa, Cappadocian city, 110, 112
 Hankana/Hang, palace, 441
 Hannibalianus, nephew of Emperor Constantine, 137
Han shu, “Han History”, 192, 232, 241, 243, 247, 541, 1265
 Hanzala, 603
haoma/soma, sacred plant, 344, 423–9 *passim*, 436, 850
 in T'ang paintings, 557
omomi, 830, 989
 and *dūraośa/durośa*, 1238
 Haoma/Soma, cult god, 344, 441
 and Mithraism, 853–4
 Haosravah/Khusrau, 413
 Haoṣyānja, *see* Höshang
 Harā/Harā-barəzaiti/Harburz/Alburz, 350–1, 352, 433, 440, 873
 harem, royal, 712
 Harēv, *see* Hērat
hargupat/brgpt, state official, 736–8 and n. 1
 Hari Rūd, 439
 Hārith b. ‘Amr/Arethas, leader of the Kinda, 152, 488, 600–2
 Hārith b. Jabala, of the Ghassānids, 606–7
 Hārithiyya, Shi‘ī faction, 1002 n. 3
 Hāritī, 93 n. 1, 206 n. 3
 Harōyu, 438
 Harpy, tomb, 104 and n. 1, 111
 Harrān, *see* Carrhae
 Hasanlu, 1101 n. 5
 Hāshimiyya, Shi‘ī faction, 1002 n. 3
 Hassān b. Thābit, poet, 609
 Hassani Mahale, 1104 n. 4
 Hašu, the martyr, 897
 Hatra/al-Ḥadr, caravan city, 91, 119, 498, 569, 612, 681, 701, 728, 844, 866
 besieged by Septimius Serverus, 94
 captured by Ardashir, 124
 fortress at, 380, 484
 origins and history, 490–1
 an Arab principality, 594–6
 temple of, 870
 an *avān*, 1049
 Aramaic inscriptions, 1268
baumā, equivalent of Nous, 974
 Hauran, the, Nabataean inscription from, 597
 Haurvatāt, 346
Hāvan Gāh, defined, 795
 First and Second Hāvan, 798
 Hawiza/Huwaiza, 500
Hazār afsānak, 497, 1168
hazārapat, state official, 702, 735–7
hazārbad/chiliarch/vuzurg framadār, the “great commander”, 148
hazār sutūn, “thousand columns”, 472
 hazelnut, 566
 Hecataios, 439
 Hecatomphylos, 40, 823
 near Dāmgān, 39
 Parthian capital, 39, 483, 543
 mint, 279, 281
 on the Silk Road, 548
 Dāmgān, 768
see also Dāmgān
 Hedyphon river, 307
 Helena, queen of Adiabene, 925
 Heliocles, Indo-Greek ruler of Bactria, 541
 a Eucratid, 189
 coin imitations, 233, 240, 246
 Helios, 113, 535, 849, 854, 855
 Hellas, 238
 Hellenism, 86, 161, 716, 878
 in Seleucid Iran, 13–18; in religion, 821–34, 866–74 *passim*
 in Asia Minor, 101–6; in Cappadocia and Pontus, 111–12; in Commagene, 113
 in Eastern Iran, 182, 185, 188–90, 198–9
 in Parthian coins, 279–98 *passim*
 in Elymais, 307–10
 in Characene, 310–13
 and Iranian myths, 468, 470, 472
 of Alexander in Iranian territories, 492, 508
 in Mesopotamia, 492–3
 in Armenia, 508–9, 517, 534
 syncretism of Greek and oriental deities, 532; in Commagene, 535
 in Georgian religious cults, 533

INDEX

- Hellenism (*cont.*)
 in the art of Outer Mongolia, 549
 in the early Parthian empire, 560
 and Iranian law, 680; in Mesopotamia, 735
 in Edessa, 709
 and religion in Parthian Iran, 834, 866–74
passim
 in Commagene, 842
 in earlier Parthian art, 844
 in Bactria, 846–7
 in the Kushān empire, 848–9
 in central Indian Buddhist sculpture, 952
 in Gandharan art, 955
 in Iranian art, 1029–54 *passim*
 in Sogdian art, 1141
 restricted use of Greek in Parthian Iran, 1154
 Greek literature and the Parthians, 1154
 edicts of Aśoka, 1180
 effect on written Bactrian, 1254–6
see also polis
 Helmand river, 193, 196, 438
 Henānā of Adiabene, 947
 Hephthalites/White Huns, 142, 146–8, 334,
 382 and n. 3, 401, 406, 602, 768–71
passim, 890, 1019
 language, 146, 213, 614
 subjects of the Turks, 163
 Arab conquest of Iran, 176
 against Hidarite Huns in Bactria, 212
 burial of the dead, 212
 important power in eastern Iran, 214
 conquest of Sughd, 259
 against Khotan, 266
 and the Turks, 613–14
 help to Kavād, 893
 in India, 957
 in Transoxiana, 1144
 Heraclius, Byzantine emperor, 168, 589, 896
 Sasanian–Byzantine conflict, 168–9, 328,
 486, 523, 607
 holy war against the Persians, 169–70
 peace with Kavad II, 170
 battle of Nineveh, 486
 and Ctesiphon, 490
 Herakles/Hercules, 14, 77, 113, 244, 282,
 310–11, 428, 824, 846, 849, 870–1
 oriental equivalents of, 532, 534, 535, 823,
 842
 Herāt / Harēv / Aria / Areia / Alexandria, 43,
 181–2, 186, 438, 459, 730, 738, 768–9,
 932 and n. 5
 Saka invasion of Bactria, 193
 mint, 287, 951
 Alexandria Areion, 822
- Hera Teleia, 842
hērbads, men wise in religion, 689, 888, 997,
 1006
 Hermaios, last Bactrian king, 191, 1030
 Hermes, 113, 526, 535
 Herod the Idumaean, 57, 74, 911
 flees to Masada, 57
 king of Judea, 58
 Hērtā dā-Taiyāē, 487
hērthā, fortified encampment, 597
 Hestiaeus, Susa treasurer, 718, 720
 Hierakome/Hierocaesareia, 102
 Hiero, satrap of Seleucia, 74
hierodouloī/sacred slaves, 109–10, 640–1
bifz, Preservation, 1006 and n. 5
 Hijāz, 598, 600, 606
bijra, 600
 Hijra era dating, 786
biliṁ-nāmak, certificate of divorce, 648
 Hilla, 499
 Himerus/Euhemerus, governor of Baby-
 lonia, 40, 283, 635
 Himyārā/Hāmāvarān, Himyarites, Yemen,
 374, 445–6, 603–4
 Ethiopians seize power, 157
 decline, 158
 under Yūsuf Dhū Nuwās, 605
 Sasanians gain from Ethiopians, 607
binajba/senāpati, defined, 265
 Hinayāna/Buddhist “Little Vehicle”, 849,
 957–8, 961, 963
 Hind, 701, 729–30, 755, 774, 776
 Hind, wife of the Lakhmid al-Mundhir III,
 488 n. 1
 Hinduism, 850, 950
 Viṣṇuit sect, 952
 Hindu Kush, 182
 Greek invasion of India, 189
 nomad invasion of Bactria, 193
 expansion of the Kushān empire, 198
 Hippostratus, Greek ruler in Bactria, 194
 against Sakas, 196
 Hira, 139, 144, 152, 157, 381, 484, 485, 487–
 8, 757
 Qādisiyya, battle, 172
 Nestorians in, 488; *Ibād*, 598
 Lakhmid rulers, Sasanian allies, 596–602
 sacked by the Ghassanids, 607
 surrender and decline of, 608
 poets of, 609–10
 Mazdakites in, 1003
 Hīsār valley and mountains, 236, 240, 245,
 257, 260
 boundary of the Kushān kingdom, 248–9
 Hishām b. Muḥammad, called Ibn al-Kalbī,
 378, 597

INDEX

- Hit, 1269
 Hitāspa, 429–30
 Hittites, 107, 109, 412, 497, 505, 533
 Hiung-nu, *see* Hsiung-nu, 36, 191
 Hiyya, 918
 Ho-chia, Sian, 550 n. 1
 Ho-hsi, 267
bokhmar, in gnostic thought, 836
 Holy Immortals, *see* Amēša Spēntas
 Hōmān, son of Vēsa, 443
 Honan, 551
 Honorius, emperor, 755
horamurta, defined, 200
 Horanzem, Queen (of Stakhr?), 708
 Hordād, 355, 792, 795
 Hormizd I/Hormizd-Ardashir, Sasanian king, son of Shāpūr I, 126–8, 365, 701, 706–7, 730, 758, 807
 date of accession, 127
 coinage, 330, 334
 Turkish campaigns, 334
 birth, in traditional history, 380–1
 severed hand, 397
 religion under, 880, 936, 970
 in legend, 1188
 Hormizd II, son of Narseh, 131, 133, 210, 327, 426, 885, 936, 1117
 Hormizd III, 214
 Hormizd IV, son of Khusrau I, 162–3, 379, 383, 391, 398, 410, 523
 death, 164
 religious policy, 585, 896, 946
 coins copied, 1125
 Hormizd V, 171
 Hormizd I Kūshānhāh, 209
 Kūshānhāhānshāh coins, 210
 coinage, 328
 Hormizd, son of Yazdgard II, 147
 Hormizd, son of the king of Mesene, 708
 Hormizdagān, battle, 96, 118, 484
 Hormizdak, son of the king of Mesene, 708
 Hormizdak, son of Hormizd-Ardashir, 708
 Hormizd-Ardashir, city founded by Ardashir I, 723, 724, 753, 889
 Hormizddukt, wife of Narseh, 708
 horses
 sacrifice of, 195, 534
 Ahriman as, 371, 414
 Rakhsh, of Rustam, 374, 453, 457; *rūj*, 1229
 angel of god, 381, 399
 Shabdēz, of Khusrau II, 383, 1087
 of Darius I, 389
 aspā in Kayanian names, 437
 and steppe nomads, 538, 542
 water-yazad as, 803
 horned, on coins, 824
 symbolic, in art, 1094
see also Drvāspā
 Hōryūji temple, Japan
 Iranian influence, 557
 Ho-sa-la (Azola? Guzār-istan?), 775
 Höshang, Siyāmak's son/grandson, 402, 404, 413, 420–2, 425, 434
 legendary founder of the Pishdadian dynasty, 371
 traditional chronology, 383–5
 Haošyanha, 413–15
 discovery of fire, 422; commemorated at Sada, 371, 801
 Höshēdar/Uxīyat. *srata*, 356, 385–6, 387
 Höshēdarmāh/Uxīyat. *nemah*, 357, 386
Hou-Han shu, 197, 232
hrvartak, defined, 530
 Hsi-chou, sicū, sicū, 268, 272
 Hsieh-li, 273
 Hsien, king of So-chü/Yārkand, 266
 Hsien-pi, 545–6
bsi-bou, Yüeh-chih realm, 246
 Hsing-an mountains, 538
 Hsi-tun, 246
 Hsiu-mi, 246
 Hsiu-mo-pa, general of Khotan, 266
 Hsiung-nu, Chinese tribe of Kansu province, 952
 ancestors of the Huns, 36
 initiate nomadic migration west, 36, 191–2, 241
 kingdom of Maotun, 192
 destruction of Lo-yang, 211, 273
 attack the Sasanian empire, 211
 and the Chang Ch'ien mission, 242–4, 540, 542
 steppe art and culture of, 539–40
 southern Hsiung-nu submit to China, 543
 against Pan Ch'aō, 543
 northern Hsiung-nu defeated, 545
 Hsi-wang-mu, Queen mother of the West, 537
 hṣtr, hṣtrdr, kingdoms, kings, 699, 700 n. 4, 730
bītrp/PHT', title, 726
see also satrapies
 Hsüan-tsang, Chinese traveller, 208, 263, 265, 614–15, 621
 on Buddhist India, Afghanistan and Khotan, 951–62 *passim*
 on the Sogdian alphabet, 1218
 on the Bactrian alphabet, 1256
 Hsüan Tsung, T'ang emperor, 259, 960
 hu, defined, 553
 Heaven-God of the Hu, 554

INDEX

- Hu, Annals of the former, Annals of the later, 1267
 Huai style, China, 539
Hudūd al-ālam, 1130
 Hwei-ch'ao, Korean traveller, 958, 960–2
 Hūi, emperor of Wei, 1020
būti-, 633
 Hujr, son of al-Hārith, 602
 Hulwān/Albania, city of, 164, 499, 759, 970
 Humāy/Humāg, daughter, wife and successor of Bahman, 377, 386, 464, 471 and n. 8, 472
 Humāyā, a daughter of Gushtāsp, 471
 Hunas, exiliarch, 918
 Huna V, exiliarch, 920
hunar, defined, 406
 Hūpas, eastern Huns, 267
 incursions into Punjab, 214
 Zābul tribal grouping, 214
 invade and rule over western India, 214
 chronology of rulers, 214
 Huns, 142, 146, 173, 548, 763, 766–8
 against Byzantines, 147
 originated from the Hsiung-nu of China, 191, 211
 red and white, 213
 Sasanian mint activity, 334
 pressure on the Sasanian empire, 764–5
 hunting parks, 103
 Hupars, 1179
Hu pén ts'ao, 553
 Hormazd, *see* Hormizd
 Hormuz, Straits of, 603
 Hormuz, port, 773
 Hurrians, 481, 497
 Husain, Imām, 451
 Husain al-Ahwāzī, Bātīni activist, 1015
 Huṣal, 918
Hūšparām Nask, *see* Avesta
 Hutaosā, wife of Vishtāspa/Gushtāsp, 460, 466
 Hu-tsao, 246
butuxšān, estate of craftsmen, 633
 hūtōkhshbadh, 738
 Huvārazmiš, ancient Khwārazm, 1135
 Huvishka/Huviška, Kushān ruler, 200, 248–9
huzvārišb, defined, 496
 Hvar, sun yazad, 465
 Hvovas, 413
'hwṛpt, equerry, 711
hwrybr, head cup-bearer, 711
hwtyw, rulers, 703, 705–6, 724
 Hydaspes/Jhelum, river, 35
 Hydra, 428
 Hyknapses, 307
hyle, Manichaean “Matter”, 973–9 *passim*
 Hypaipa, centre of worship of Anaitis, 100 n. 1
 sanctuary of Anaitis, 102
 hyparchy, 754, 757, 932
 administrative division, 1263
 Hyrcania/Gurgān, 31, 74–6, 102, 439, 459, 483, 701–2, 730–1, 767–9
 a unit with Parthia, 24
 and Mithradates I, 34, 39
 Artabanus exiled, 74
 revolt, 82
 Parthian war, 83
 and the Sasanians, 142, 160, 214
 inscription, 186
 eastern campaigns of Antiochus III, 187
 Yazdgard the Sinner in, 381
 Mazdakites in, 1001, 1004
 “warkan”, 1161
 Hyrcanian plain, Lydia, 102
 Hyrcanus, 911
 Hycodes, 245
 coins of, 252
 Hyspaosines, prince of Characene, Seleucid satrap, 40, 283, 310–11
 overthrown by Mithradates II, 40
 and Charax Spasinou, 487, 594
 Hystaspes, father of Darius, 467–8, 535
 Hystaspes, Magian, 828
 the Oracles of, 825, 831–3, 834–5, 982, 1195
 Hystaspes, son of Darius, 181
bx'lwp̄t, rank of the nobility, 703, 706, 708, 735
 ‘Ibād, 598, 605
ibāha, 1013
 Iberia/eastern Georgia, kingdom of, 509, 514–15, 519, 525, 528, 701, 705, 729, 730–1, 764, 996 n. 7
 Pompey in, 516
 Shāpūr I and, 519
 Iberian Arsacids and Chosroids, 520
 autonomy and Christianity, 523
 feudalism in, 528, 531
 religion, 532–4
 Ibn al-Athīr, 994, 1281
 Ibn al-Balkhī, author of the *Fārs-nāma*, 363, 402, 403, 449, 458, 994
 source-value assessed, 1279
 Ibn al-Faqīh, 999
 Ibn Hazm, 1004
 Ibn Isfandiyār, author of *Tārikh-i Tabaristān*
 includes “The Letter of Tansar”, 363, 1184, 1279
 Ibn al-Jauzī, 1004

INDEX

- Ibn Khurdādhbih, Muslim geographer, 600, 1281
- Ibn al-Muqaffa‘, 359, 361, 363, 419, 420, 989, 992–3, 994, 1280
and “The Letter of Tansar”, 1184
- Ibn al-Nadīm, 469, 973, 989, 994, 997
Fibrist, 967–9 *passim*, 975, 989, 1183
on the identity of Khurramis and Mazdakites, 1004
- Khurrami marriage ritual, 1010–11
- source for Neo-Mazdakism, 1011–12
- Ibn Qutaiba, 1280
‘Uyūn al-akhbār, 361
al-Ma‘ārif, 361,
- Ibn Rizām, 1023
- Ibn Sa‘id, author, 600–1
- Ibn Zikrawaih, Bātīni activist, 1015
- I-chou/Hami/Qomul, 268, 273
- Iddai, a Palmyrene synodarch, 740
- ‘Ijl, 609
- Ikaros (modern Failaka), 14, 823
excavated, 1032; plan of temple, 1033;
column bases, 1047
- ikshid*, of Sughd, 259
- Ili river and valley, 36, 192, 541, 543
possible northerly silk route, 548
- illegitimate children, 634–5
- imāms
and the Shi‘is, 1001
Mazdakite, 1009
imamate of Abū Muslim, and Ismā‘ilis, 1014
of the Bātīnis, 1016–18
- ‘Imārat-i Khusrau, palace, *see* Qaṣr-i Shirin
- Imra‘ al-Qais, a Lakhmid prince, 488
- Indar, *daēva*, 898
- Indates
Parthian general, 37
- India, 4, 6, 12, 83, 90, 106, 145, 312, 382, 401, 410, 432, 446, 455, 456, 550, 560, 563, 593, 644, 752
Maurya dynasty, 4, 185, 189
expansion of Kushān empire, 90, 198;
small-pox epidemic, 93
Sasanian expansion, 156
trade with Byzantine empire, 157, 198,
757
trade with China, 198, 552
caste system, 160
Saka empire, 181, 614
battle of Hydaspes, 185
the Malli against Alexander, 185
Indo-Greek/Indo-Bactrian kings, 189
invasion by Bactrian Greeks, 189–90
the Indian era, 190
Vicrama era, 196
- Greeks against Sakas, 196
invasion of eastern Huns, 214
transmission of scripts to, 494
Nestorian mission to, 500
Hellenism in, 508
Old Indian and Iranian law, 680
trade with Iran, 739–40, 756; Roman
rivalry in, 756–7
sun-worship, 850–1
and the rise of Buddhism, 949–58
see also Hind, Indo-Bactrian/Indo-Greek
kings, Parsees
- Indo-Bactrian/Indo-Greek/Graeco-Bactrian
kings, 35, 189–91, 823, 1141
invade India, 189, 952
Eucratides against Euthydemids, 189
Menander, 190
nomads invade, 191–6
Old Saka era, 201
chronological table, 218
dominions, 239–41
- Indo-Parthian Dynasty
equals of the Arsacids in Iran, 41
Gondophares, 51, 197
Taxila excavated, 76
conquest of the Indo-Scythian empire, 197
chronological table, 218
coins, 1030
- Indo-Scythian dynasty and empire, 182
first ruler, 191
established, 194–7; conquered by the
Indo-Parthians, 197
chronological table, 218
coins, 1030
- Indra, 344, 348, 412, 428, 444, 451
- Indus Kuhistān, 194
- Indus, river and valley, 2, 35, 198, 203, 482,
510, 952
identified with Ranjha, 352
- inheritance, *see* property law
- Innaios, a disciple of Māni, 885
- interest, 673–5, 1024
- Iodmangan, 515
- Ipsos, 482
- Īrān āsān Kar(?) Kavād, 136 and n. 3
- Īrān Khwarrah Shāpūr, *see* Susa
- Iraq, 152, 154–5, 490, 494, 502, 503, 604,
1015
Sasanian fortifications, 160, 485, 603
Nahrawān canal system, 160
of Irān, not Anirān, 481
retained by the Parthians, 483
Shāpūr II and, 485, 603
penetration of language into Persian, 495
Sasanian Christian organization, 499;
Nestorianism, 500; Yazidis, 501

INDEX

- Iraq (*cont.*)
 Arab principalities; Characene, 594;
 Hatra, 594–6; Hira, 597–602
 Persian influence on architecture, 612
 Manichaeans, 861, 988–9
 Mazdakites and Shi'i extremists, 1001,
 1013
see also Babylonia, Mesopotamia
 Irbil, *see* Arbela
 iron
 Seric and Chinese cast, 551 and n. 2
 Parthian, 560
 strategic commodity, 744
 irrigation, 11, 13, 69–70, 379, 602, 661, 672,
 769, 777, 1141
 Sasanian dams, 126, 132
 in Iraq, 160–1
 in Transoxiana, 244, 248
 Band-i Qaisar dam, 563
 waterwheel/mill, windmill, 563
 in 'Umān, 604
 dam of Ma'rib, 604–5
 in Pārs, 752
 dams in Khūzistān, 753
 in Asūrīstān, 760
 in the Āmū Daryā delta, 1135, 1140
see also canals, *qanāt*
 Isatichae/Yazd, 752
 Isfahān, 96, 402, 457, 731, 752–3
 Jews of, 915–16
 a Mazdakite area, 1001
 Isfandiyār, 346, 374–471 *passim*, 611, 1158
 slaying of demons, 348
 in traditional history, 376–7, 469–70
 “Seven Stations”/Hajt Khwān, 376, 428,
 469
 Espendadates, 388
 Sphehdadates/Spento.data, 415, 470
 Isfarā'ini, 1013
 Ishāq/Isaac, bishop of Seleucia, 144, 931,
 940
 Ishmael, 918
 Ishtar, 458, 532, 534
 Isis, 839
 Islam, 524, 568, 609, 939, 957, 1017, 1166,
 1182
 Persian converts in the Yemen, 607
 and Zurvanism, 609
 repression of Manichaeism, 989
 Mazdakism under, 1001–6, 1022; Islamic
 forms, 1008–18
 and Abu Sa'idis, 1024
see also Shi'is, Sunnism
 Isma'ili, religious sect, 991
 imāms, 1014
 Ismā'il b. Ja'far, house of, 1023
 Isō'yahb, synod of, 946
 Isō'yahb II, Catholicos, 947
 Issyk Kul, lake, 192, 540
 istabraq, 611
 İştakhr, *see* Stakhr
 İstāmī, Western Turkish Qaghan, 617
 Italakan, 146
 itāwa, tax, 601
 ivory
 Nisā hoard, 1041
 use in Iran, 1101 and n. 5
 İyād, 608
 İyās b. Qabişa al-Tagħlibi, of Hira, 608
 Izates, ruler of Adiabene, 75, 76
 given the territory of Nisibis, 75
 conflict with Rome over Armenia, 76–7
 Izates II, 728
 Jabal Akhḍar, 604
 Jabal Khayābir, site at, 755
 Jabal Sinjār river, 88, 94
 Jabal Suraj, 182
 Jacob of Nisibis, 925 n. 5
 jadd, in Bāṭinī myth, 1016
 Jade Gate/Yü-mén-kuan, 548
 Jadhima al-Abrash, ruler of Hira, 597
 Jagatū, inscription, 1256
 Jaghatū valley, 762
 Jāguḍa, near Qandahār, 951
 Jāhiliyya, the, 609
 Jāhīz, reputed author of the *Kitāb al-Tāj*,
 364, 1280
 Jaihānī, 1174
 Jalāl al-Dīn, Khwārazmian prince, 216
 Jalāl al-Dīn Firūz, founder of the Khalji
 dynasty, 216
 Jalandhara, 204
 Jalūlā (modern Jalaula), battle of, 486
 Jāmāsp, Sasanian king, *see* Zāmāsp
 Jāmāspa/Jāmāsp, vizier of Gushtāsp, 413,
 437, 1194
 Jāmāsp-nāmag, 1160
jām-i Jam, “Jam’s cup” 426
 Jamshēd/Yima xšaēta, 345–6, 357, 365, 395,
 398, 402–5, 413–15, 429–34 *passim*,
 445, 448
 in traditional history, 371–2, 383–5,
 422–6
 and social estates, 397
 Yima-Yimī, 421, 425
 his regular epithets, 423
 and the Nō Rōz festival, 798, 807
 Janbsābūr/Hanbū-Shāpūr, 758
 Jandial, temple of, 851, 1035 and n. 2
 plan, 1036
 jarib, land tax unit, 746, 760

INDEX

- Jarrāh, governor of Khurāsān, 259
 Jason, 524
jātī, worship, 793
 Jātaka, the Deer, 555
iātakas, former lives of the Buddha, 952, 1235
Jātakastava, 269, 1235, 1240
 Jāvidān b. Shahrak, leader of the Khurramis
 wife of, 1000 n. 3; marriage, 1010–11
 Bābak as reincarnation of, 1005
 Jāvidāniyya, Mazdakites, 1004
Jāvidān Xirad, 1184–5
 Jaxartes/Syr Daryā, river, 17, 27, 182, 192, 215, 236, 243, 245
 identified with Rājha, 352
 Jeh, 355
jebān-pahlavān, chief warrior, 373
 Jelālābād, 956
 Jerusalem, 57–8, 471, 821, 903, 917, 924
 reconquered by Mark Antony, 58
 destroyed by Nebukadnesser, 466
 restoration of the temple, 499, 915
 raided by Persians, 523
 sack of, 586, 592
 Jesus, 840, 860
 the Splendour, 980
 three Manichaean roles, 984
 Yīsō‘ Aryaman, 1198–9
 jewelry, Sasanian, 1102–4
 Jews, 3, 24, 57, 514, 631, 640, 757, 789, 821, 835, 890, 896, 924, 1024, 1182
 of Judea, 56
 expansion of the Parthian kingdom, 57
 of Babylonia, 57, 69, 498–9, 719, 759; in legend, 471
 Anilaeus and Asinaeus, 71–3, 911–12
 persecution of, 139, 147, 882
 military colony in Egypt, 497
 in Assyria, 498
 deported from Armenia, 521, 753
 in Medina, 600–1
 in Himyar, 605
 and taxation, 609, 745
 under Shāpūr I, 879–80, 914
 under Yazdgard I, 889, 915
 of Iran, 909–23; in the western satrapies, 909–10; Seleucid, 910; Parthian, 910–13; Sasanian, 913–17; autonomous government, 917–20
 in the Sasanian army, 916, 1276 n. 5
 Jibāl, 121
 and Mazdakism, 1001, 1004–5
 Jibghu, a Khazar khan, 523
 Jinagupta, Buddhist monk, 963
Jivaka-pustaka, 1233–4
jiz̄ya, poll-tax, *see* taxation
 John of Ephesus, 879, 936
 the “History”, 1277
 John the Faster, patriarch of Constantinople, 585
 John/Hovhannes Mandakuni, St, “On the Theatre and the Gusans”, 536
 John of Nikiu, 591
 Jörungand, 428
 Josaphat, 536, 583
 Joseph, Armenian patriarch, 147
 Joseph, Catholicos, 946
 Jōshū/Yōshū/Yōišta, 413
 Joshua the Stylite, 945
 Chronicle of, 1277
 Jovian, Roman emperor, 138, 761
 and Shāpūr II, 485
 Juan-juan, nomads, 266, 546, 616
 Juančer, Albanian prince, 1104, 1108
 Judeans, 728, 739
 Judah, Patriarch of Jewish Palestine, 912, 918
 Judaism, 837, 912, 939
 of Jews in Iran, 920–3
 attacked by the Sasanians, 913; possible cause, 916
 judges, 633, 676–9, 726, 728, 734
 Julandā, Āl, 604
 Julian the Apostate, Roman emperor, 137, 757, 915
 and Shāpūr II, 485, 759
 Jupiter, 832
 Jurjin b. Milād, 475
 Justin I, Byzantine emperor, 151, 571, 578–9
 Justin II, 158–9
 persecution of the Monophysite Christians, 158
 subsidies to Arab chiefs for non-invasion, 158
 Justin, Martyr, 927
 Justinian, 152, 154, 157, 549, 591, 617, 897
 and the academy at Athens, 161, 486, 571
 fights Persians for Lazica and Svaneti, 521
 Parthian border strengthened, 569, 581
 state silk monopoly, 549, 570, 762
 and South Arabia, 605–6
 Jut tribes, 772
 Jvari, church of, near Mtskheta, 523
 Ka‘ba, the, at Mecca, 172, 606
 Ka‘ba-yi Zardusht, Sasanian monument, 120, 129, 203, 232, 258, 325, 392, 474, 506 n. 2, 604, 628, 682, 694, 723
 inscription of Shāpūr I, 116–17, 392, 576–7, 642
 extent of empire, 126–7
 and Caucasian history, 519
 close-kin marriage, 644

INDEX

- Ka'ba-yi Zardusht
 inscription of Shāpūr I (*cont.*)
 clan names, 645
 endowment, 662–3
 royal formulary, 696
 nobility, 702–8
 court titles, 711–12
 cities founded, 724–5
 Sakastān in, 729
 administration, 730–1
 Iran and non-Iran, 731
 geographical list, 747
 on Valerian, 1083 n. 3
 Parthian language, 1164
 contents and importance, 1207–8
 inscription of Kartir, 519, 683, 702, 898,
1210–11
 note on religious sects in, 907–8
 on Christianity, 929
- Kabul, 156, 374, 426, 452, 731
 as capital of the Zābulite kings, 214
 mint, 335
- Kabul river, 182, 185, 212
- Kābulistān, 430
- Kābūs, king of Carmania, 731
- Kāfirnīhān, 240
 river, 245, 248
- kāgdā, paper, 622
- kai/kavi*, 436, 1242–3
- Kai Apivēh, son of Kai Kavād, 444, 466
- Kai Ārish, 373, 406, 431, 444, 475, 686
 and the Tiragān festival, 803
- Kai Armin, 444
- Kai Ashak, 475
- Kai Byarsh, 444
- Kai Kavād/Kavi Kavāta, 346, 351, 383–4,
 402–5, 414, 432–8 *passim*, 453, 465, 475
 founder of the Kayanian dynasty, 374
 in Iranian historiography, 444
- Kai Kāvūs, 44, 51, 348, 374–462 *passim*, 1156
 summary of his legend, 374–6
- Kavi Usadhan/Usan, 437
 in traditional historiography, 444–5
- Kai Us, 444
 origins of the legend, 445–8
- Kai Khusrav/Kavi Haosravah, son of
 Siyāvush, 356–7, 374–466 *passim*, 895, 1194
 outline of his legend, 375–6
 in Iranian historiography, 451–3
- Kai Manūsh, 466
- Kai b. Milād, 475
- Kai Ōji/Ōzi/Ōgi, 466
- Kai Pisn/Pashīn, 444, 466
- Kai Pisnang, 444
- Kaisāniyya, Shi'i faction, 1002 n. 3, 1009 and
 n. 1, 1022–3
- Kaiser, 160, 403
- Kai Us, *see* Kai Kāvūs
- kaj*, husbands of the *parik*, 536
- Kakrak, 556, 954
- Kalaly-gyr I, 1135
- Kalawan, copper-plate, 196
- Kaldāya/Kásdim/Xaλdañor, 828
- Kal-i Jangāl, 26 and n. 2, 681
- Kalila wa Dimna*, 161, 475, 497, 1168, 1125
- Kalinga/Orissa, 950
- Kamak/Pēhan, the Bird, 430
- kamāna*, violin, 502
- kamara*, defined, 918
- Kambojas, of north-west India, 951
- Kamnaskires dynasty, of Elymais, 727
- Kamnaskires I, 34, 282, 307
- Kamnaskires II, 307
- Kamsarakan, Armenian noble family, 531,
 965 and n. 3
- kanārang*, defined, 731, 1251
see also marzbān
- kāñcako*, 1232
- Kan-chou/Kamacū, 274
- Kandahār, *see* Alexandria in Arachosia
- Kandrau, 416
- kang*, 1135
- K'ang, 552
- Kangāvar, in Media, temple of, 1035
- K'ang-chü, confederation of tribes in Trans-
 oxiana, 1135–6
 location of the state, 1136 and n. 2
- Kang Dēz castle, 375, 448, 469, 1136 and n. 2
- K'ang-kiu, 242, 246
- K'ang-kü (Samarkand and neighbourhood),
 615
- K'ang Meng Hsiang, 959
- K'ang Tai-pin, 274
- K'ang Yen-tien, 273
- Kanheri, inscriptions at, 683
- Kanishka/Kaniška I, Kushān ruler, 199–
 200, 956, 1236
 chronology, 201, 247, 954
 Sasanians overthrow Kushān empire, 203
 tolerance of Buddhism, 204, 954, 958;
 monastery and stūpa founded, 204, 209,
 955
 cultural activity in his reign, 204; art,
 1029
 succession to the throne, 207
 campaign in eastern Turkestan, 208
 influence on Buddhists on the route to
 China, 209
 coins, 248–9, 1030–1
 and religion, 848–51 *passim*
 and Khotan, 958
see also Surkh Kotal

INDEX

- Kanishka II, ruler of the eastern Kushān empire, 203, 207, 847
 Kanishka III, successor of Vāsudeva, 203–4, 207, 248
 Kansu, province of China, 192, 540, 547, 552
 Uighur state of, 862
 Kānva dynasty, of India, 952
 Kan Ying, 543
Kao-ch'ang, *see* Qočo
 Kao-fu, 246
 Kao Tsung, 547, 552
 Kāp/Caucasus, 730
 Kapāt, *see* Kavād
kṛpānī, sum guaranteed to a divorced woman, 647, 648, 674
 Kapisa (modern Begram), 189, 209, 951
 Buddhism and, 955–8 *passim*
 Kapūd, the wolf, 430
kara/kar mābik, 1242
 Karabalgasun, 273
 Karafto, in Iranian Kurdistan, 78
 caves, 762
 Karalang, 248
 Karashahr, *see* Qarashahr
 Kāra-tepe, Buddhist cave complex, 683, 956, 1143
 Karazm/Kavārasman, 415
 Kardār, son of Mihr-Narsch, 633
kārdārān, state officials, 706, 727
kārdārib, as determinant of rank, 645
 Kardēr, *see* Kartir
 Kāren/Qārin, house of, 77 and n. 2, 130, 280, 367, 401, 703–5
 Sasanian semi-independent rulers, 705
 Kāren, son of Kāva, 373, 435, 457
kār-framān, official, 630, 738
karga/keroqa, poll-tax, *see* taxation
 Kārin, *see* Theodosiopolis
 Karinid, 354
 Karkā dē Bēt Sēlōk/Kirkuk, 17, 118, 499, 760–1, 925 and n. 4, 932, 970
 Chronicle of, 1276
 Karkh, 612
karkhā, fortified settlement, town, 594
 Karkha de Ledan/Ērānshahr-Shāpūr, city north of Susa, renamed Īrānāsān Kar(t)
 Kavād, 136, 753, 1108
 Karkh Guddān, 881
Kārnāmag i Anōśirvān, 1183
Kārnāmag i Ardashir, 117, 348, 365, 380, 393, 460, 477, 530, 627, 697, 701, 704, 725, 876, 933, 1187–8
 old Persian minstrel traditions in, 1161
 source value assessed, 1278
karpan, sorceresses, 396, 436, 451
 Karshāsp/Kārəsāspa, legendary warrior, 348, 357, 373, 413–36 *passim*, 453, 1194
 in Iranian traditional history, 429–33
 Sām/Karshāsp, 430, 432–3
 identification with Rustam, 454–6
 trial by fire, 1186
 Karshi, village near Nisibis, 88
 Karshiptar, 346
karšvar/kishvar, 350
kartak procedure for guardianship, 651
 Kartir / Kardēr / Kerdīr / Kirdīr, Sasanian priest, 128–9, 628, 663–4, 695, 807, 858, 887, 901, 905, 914
 Sar Mashhad inscription, 683
 Naqsh-i Rustam inscription, 683, 702, 731
 Naqsh-i Rajab inscription, 683, 706, 883
 rank and titles, 706, 878, 880, 882
 under Shāpūr I, 878–9, 935, 969
 under Hormizd I, 880
 under Bahrām I, 881; and Mānī, 971
 under Bahrām II, 881–4
 persecution of heretics, 882–3, 929, 936
 destroyed by Narsēh, 885
 content and dating of his inscriptions, 1209–11
 pronunciation of his name, 1209 n. 5
 see also Ka'bā-yi Zardusht
 Kartli, Inner, 515
Kartlis tskhovreba, Georgian Annals, 514
 Kartvelian (Georgian) nation, 514
 ancestor Kartlos, 514
 Kartlosids, 514
 Kāshān, 493
 Kāshghar, 127, 194, 543, 546, 548, 623, 961
 struggle with Khotan, 271
 and Buddhism, 963
 Ga-hjag, 1232
 Kāshgari, author, 449
 Divān lugbāt al-turk, 1232
 Kashka Daryā, oasis, 254
 Kashmir, 214, 1239
 Kashvād/Jashvād/Gashvād, 457
 Kaspar, leader of the Three Magi, 51 n. 1
 Kassites, 481, 492, 498
 documents, 412
 Kāsyapa, the Elder, 951
katak, use defined, 641
 katak-bānūk, 641
 katak-xvatāy, 641
 Katāyūn, wife of Gushtāsp, 467 and n. 2, 468
katharioi, religious sect, 965 n. 6
 Kathars, 965 n. 6
katoikia, polis-type city, 822
Kauśitaki-Upaniṣad, 978

INDEX

- Kāva/Kābī, the smith, 372 and n. 3, 373, 429
 ancestor of Gōdarz, 457
 Kāvīyān banner, 429, 459, 475
 Kavād, brother of Kashvād, 457
 Kavād I, Sasanian king, son of Pērōz, 148–
 151, 153, 323, 378, 630, 752, 758, 761,
 765, 916
 hostage to the Hephthalites, 148, 214,
 1118
 first reign, 149–50
 sympathy for Mazdakism, 150, 892–3,
 945–6, 991–7 *passim*, 1013, 1020–1
 deposed, 150, 892, 1021 and n. 4
 regains the throne, 150, 893
 against the Byzantines, 150–2
 succession, 151
 coinage, 326, 329–30, 333, 335
 in traditional history, 379, 382, 398, 406,
 474
 and Mazdakism in Mecca, 600
 and Kindī rule in Ḥira, 602
 Kavad II/Shiroe/Shiroy, son of Khusrāu II,
 170, 361
 Byzantine–Sasanian conflict, 170
 peace with Heraclius, 170, 486
 death, 170
 in traditional history, 379, 404, 405, 408;
 murder of Khusrāu II, 383; death, 399
 murder of Khusrāu II, 486
 Kavārasman/Karazm, 415
 Kavar Seleucus, at Persepolis, 682
kavi, 396, 436–7 and n. 2, 444, 451
 kawāñ, 1199
 as *kai* in Saka texts, 1242–3
 Kavi Aipi.vanju, 437
 Kavi Aršan, 437, 684, 697
 Kavi Byaršan, 437
 Kavi Haosravah, *see* Kai Khusrāu
 Kavi Kavāta, *see* Kai Kavād
 Kavi Pisinagh, 437
 Kavi Syāvaršan, 437
 Kavi Usā/Kāyus, 447
 Kavi Usadhan/Usan, *see* Kai Kāvūs
 Kavi Vištāspa/Vistāsp, *see* Gushtāsp
 Kāvūs, elder son of Kavād I, 1021 and n. 5
kātya, mantic utterances, 436
 Kāvya Ušanas, 444–5
kax̄-arəða-, sorcerer, 1248
 Kayanian dynasty, Kayanians, in traditional
 history and myth, 355, 435, 364–434
 passim, 436–73
 establishment of the dynasty, 374
 Ardashir a descendant, 378
 chronology, 385
 the Kayanian era, 436–73; first period,
 444–53; second, 465–70; third, 470–3
 historicity, 436, 438, 461
 derivation of name, 436
 geographical milieu, 438–40
 Turanian enemies, 440–3
 noble warriors, 453–61
 mingled with Parthian legends, 458–9,
 1155–6
 aspects of the Kayanian epic cycle, 461–5
 become legendary ancestors of the
 Sasanians, 697–8
 Kayōmarth, *see* Gayōmard
 Kāyus/Kavi Usā, 447
 Kāzrōn/Kāzrūn, 751
kdy, Kayanid, 697
 Keltminar, Khwarazmian Neolithic culture,
 1134
 Kent, town, 623
 Kephalaia, *see* Mānī
 Kerch, Sarmatian catacomb, 1138
 Kerder, oasis, 256
 Kārosāspa, *see* Karshāsp
 Khābūr-Kavādh, 761
 Khādalik, 269
 Khalaj/Khaljī dynasty, 216–17
 Khalchayan, 249, 844, 847, 866
 palace, wall paintings, clay sculptures,
 1044, 1142, 1048; Parthian arches, 1052
 Khālid, the Barmakid, counsellor of the
 caliph Mansūr, 490
 Khālid b. al-Walīd, Arab commander-in-
 chief, 486, 487, 608
 Khamīk, 260
khandaq, trench, 491, 611
khandag Sābūr, fortifications, 138, 603
 Khanjast, *see* Čačasta
 Khāns, 5, 13
 Khaqān of the Turks, 382 and n. 3, 411, 741,
 1283
 Kharahostes, Saka prince, 195
 coinage, 195
kharāj, produce-tax, 760
kharāj-misāb, ‘Abbasid tax, 746
 Khārg, Persian Gulf island, 929
 Kharzāsañ, 376 n. 1
 Khattābiyya, Shi‘i faction, 1002 n. 3
 Khawarnaq palace, near Ḥira, 488, 598, 612
 Khazars, nomad tribe, 163, 470, 523, 1183
 alliance with Byzantines, 170
 Khazraj, 600
 Khingila Narendraditya, Hüṇa king, 214
 Khirbat al-Mafjar palace, 612
 Khirbet-Kerak pottery culture, 505
 Khisht Tepe, 189, 246
khiyāl, in Bātīni myth, 1016
 Khocas, Red, 267
khorāsān, the east “side”, 732

INDEX

- Khosrov, Arsacid king of Armenia, 121,
 125
 assassinated by Sasanians, 125
 Khotan / Gostana / Ch'ü-sa-tan-na / Yotqan,
 209, 269, 456, 549, 558, 1222–3
 under Chinese rule, 263, 268, 548
 coinage, 265
 succession of kings, 267–8
 under Tibetan power, 268–9
 war against Kashgar, 271
 Chinese depose ruler, 543
 Chinese control restored, 545–6
 Saka kingdom in, 614
 a Buddhist centre, 849–50, 951–2, 962–4;
 Saka writings, 1230–43
 names for, 1232
khudā[b]-kushān, king-killers, 404
 Khujand/Alexandreschate/Leninabad, 822
kbum, clay jars, 1135
 Khumbaba, 428
 Khung-i Kamālvand, rock sculpture, 1043
 Khung-i Naurūzi (or Khung-i Aždar), rock
 sculpture, 735, 1043, 1046, 1048, 1078
 n. 4
 Khung-i Yār-'Alivand, rock sculpture, 1043
khūn-i Siyāvushān, “blood of Siyāvush” herb,
 451
 Khurāsān, 128, 154, 287, 294, 382, 407, 861,
 1157
 Greater Khurāsān, 379
 Manichaean stronghold, 970
 Mazdakites in, 1001, 1004
 al-Muqanna' revolt, 1003
 emigrants found the Pārsī community,
 1169
 Khurkha, in Media, 1035, 1047
 Khurragān, father of Zardusht, 995, 1013
 Khurrama, alleged wife of Mazdak, 1000
 n. 3, 1005
 Khurramiyya / Khurramdīnīs / Khurramis,
 992, 995, 1002, 1007, 1022
 name given to extremist Shi'is, 1001
 or Khurramdīnīyya, 1003
 identity with Mazdakites, 1004
 derivation of name, 1005
 history, 1005–6
 beliefs and practices, 1008–14; reflected
 in Bātīni teachings, 1016–18
 relationship with other sects, 1015–16
 Khushnāvāz, 214
khusrav, king of kings, 1006
 Parthian name, 687
 Khusrau I/*Kisrā*, Anūshirvān, Sasanian king,
 son of Kavād, 64, 120, 132, 136, 144,
 151–3, 570–1, 577–9, 583, 591, 629, 710,
 732, 750, 758, 762, 776
 and the Mazdakites, 151, 162, 991–6
^{passim}, 999–1001, 1021–2, 1024
 against the Byzantines, 153–5, 157–8, 521;
 frontier fortifications, 581
 tax reforms, 153–4, 587–8, 745–6
 state administration, 153, 172, 736
 dividing of the empire, 154, 172
 army reforms, 154; administration, 588–9
 besieges Edessa, 155–6
 relations with southern Arabia, 157–8
Kisrā, 160
 urban developments, 160
 and religion, 161, 893–6, 935, 946
 fortifications against the Hepthalites,
 214–15
 coinage, 327–8, 330, 333, 335
 in traditional history, 379, 395, 397–9,
 404, 410, 471, 474; portrait, 392
 and Mesopotamia, 486; irrigation, 760
 medieval claim of Christian conversion,
 568
 and the Arabs, 600, 602, 604, 607
 decree on judicial reform, 630
 and the Huns, 764–5
 against Kāvūs for the succession, 1021
 and n. 5
Andarz of, 1181–2
Kārnāmag i Anōširvān, 1183
 and chess, 1185
 Khusrau II Abarvēz/Parvēz, son of Hormizd
 IV, 121, 133, 158, 164, 585, 601, 628,
 693, 757, 760, 776, 1283
 against Bahram Chōbin for the throne,
 164–5; in traditional historiography,
 381–2
 and religion, 166, 171–2, 500, 568, 585–6,
 896–7, 946
 against the Byzantines, 167, 486, 523
 re-establishment of the Achaemenian
 empire, 169, 174
 death, 170, 486, 523
 wealth, 171
 cultural pursuits, 171
 coinage, 325–30, 335–6
 in traditional history, 379, 383, 403–6,
 410–11, 591; wealth and pomp, 408
 and Ḥira, 487–8, 607–8
 marriages, 500
 and the Emperor Maurice, 574–5, 577–9
 builder of the ‘Imārat-i Khusrau palace?’
 1068
 grotto at Tāq-i Bustān, 1085–9, 1124 n. 4
 portrait on a seal, 1099
^{see also} *takht-i tāqdis*
 Khusrau III, nephew of Khusrau II, 171
 Khusrau IV, 171

INDEX

- Khusrau, Cup of, 1097, 1102, 1213
 “Khusrau and the Page”, 171, 564, 1182–3
 Khusro Shād Kavād, the district in which
 Ctesiphon was located, 120
 Khuttal, 958
 Khuwāra, 1244
 Khūy, 59
 Khūzistān, 131, 137, 139, 379, 484–5,
 750
 centre of Christianity, 140, 929
 irrigation, 160
 satrapy taken by Seleucid I, 482
 episcopal see in, 499
 Mandaeans in, 500
 geography and agriculture, 753–4
 rock-reliefs, 1078, 1153
 weavers in, 1107–8
 Khūzistān-wāzār/Sūq al-Ahwāz, renamed
 Hormizd-Ardashir, 753
 Khvātāv, 256
 Khwādīy-nāmag, 342, 345, 693, 698, 1167–8
 as source for Iranian traditional history,
 359–477 *passim*
 used by later writers, 359–61, 993–4
 outline of Iranian history as recorded in,
 366
 religious outlook of, 394–5
 as political instrument, 397
 Parthian, Saka and Kayanian traditions
 mingled, 1156–7
 Khwanīrah, 372, 428, 747
 Khwārazm/Chorasmia, 124, 216, 244, 259,
 787, 852, 959, 1254
 and the Sasanians, 125, 130, 175, 731
 Achaemenian period, 181, 439; *Huwāraz-*
 mīs, 1244
 as agriculturalists, 232, 257
 coinage, 235, 245, 254–5, 258
 and Alexander the Great, 238–9
 partition, 250
 Avestan homeland? 352, 438–9, 1244
 and Siyāvush, 448–9
 calendar and festivals, 789, 811–12; table,
 814–15
 language, 1131; script, 1151; and writings,
 1244–9
 art, 1134–41
 K’ang-chü, 1135–6
 Kushān dominance doubtful, 1139–40
 loss of autonomy, 1140
 “Afrihid” period, 1140
 Zoroastrian *X^oārizm*, 1244
 Khwārazmī, author of *Mafātīh al-‘ulūm*, 364,
 664, 1281
 khwār-din, “of base religion”, 1005 n. 4
 khwār-vārān, the west “side”, 732
 Khwasak, satrap of Susa
 commemorative stele, 95, 688, 691, 735,
 873
khwēdōdah/xvaētvadatha, close-kin marriage,
 see marriage
 Kidara, Kidarite Huns, 147, 766–8, 770–1,
 776, 1125
 against Hephthalites, 212
 synonymous with Chionites, 212
 Kidukāns, clan of the, 703
 Kinda tribe, 152, 488, 597
 the Kinda confederacy, 157, 601–2
 Kineas, founder of Ai Khanum, 15
 kingship, 792
 Seleucid, 7, 10, 695, 824–5, 873
 Sasanian, 133–6
 and *xvarənah*, 134, 345–6, 368, 825, 832,
 935, 1093; diadem a symbol, 1081,
 1087; halo, 1087
 in Iranian traditional history, 403–8, 477
 audiences, 408; at festivals, 800, 802–3
 Aramean, 447
 feudal (Armenia, Parthia), 528–31 *passim*
 guardian of Zoroastrianism, 585
 Parthian and Sasanian conception of royal
 authority, 683–98; the succession, 133–
 4, 689–94, 888–9; divine origins and
 deification, 694–6, 873; legendary
 ancestry, 697–8
 the king’s council, 689–90, 707–8
 investitures of local rulers in Parthian
 reliefs, 735
 divine investiture in Sasanian reliefs, 735;
 royal apotheosis, 1080–7; iconography,
 1080–1
 Magian “astrolization” of, 832
 ruler cult in Commagene, 841–2
 ruler cult in earlier Parthian art, 844
 and Anāhitā, 845–6
 deification of Bactrian kings, 847
 Zoroastrianism and, 864
 portrait busts as symbols, 1093
 Sasanian propaganda court silver, 1117
 and n. 6; the hunt as an expression of
 royal power, 1117 and n. 6
kin-i Siyāvush, songs, 449
 Kirdisrau, *pītiāxš* at the court of Shāpūr I,
 736
 Kirghiz Turks, 616, 862
 Kirkuk see Karkā dē Bēt Səlōk
 Kirmān/Carmania, 130, 188, 493, 714, 750,
 771–3, 1188
 Sasanians expand into, 118; Sasanian sub-
 king, 120, 126, 143; under the Sasanians,
 729–31
 Arabs resettled in, 603

INDEX

- Kirmān (*cont.*)
 kings at the Sasanian court, 701, 705
 Kirmānshāh, 767
 rock-carving of Khusrav II, 171
 Kish, 127, 240, 258, 890, 1104, 1106, 1115
 palaces at, 1069–73
kishvar, defined, 747
Kisrā, *see* Khusrav I
kitābat al-awqāf, endowments official, 665
Kitāb al-had’ wa'l-tarīkh, *see* Maqdisi
Kitāb Rustam wa Isfandiyār, 469
Kitāb suwar mulūk bani Sāsān, 362
Kitāb al-tāj, 364, 1280
Kitāb al-tanbīh wa'l-iṣhrāf, *see* Mas'ūdī
 Kizil, in Turkestan, 556
klstydn, Christians, 907, 929
 Kobala, 241
 Köfich/Akanfaciya, tribe, 772
 Kol-krylgan-kala, fortress 1135–8
 Kokcha river, 188
 Kök-Türk, 616–17, 621
 titles of rulers, 622
 Kōmis mountain, 467
 Kopet Dāgh, 538
 Kophasates/Kohzādh, 41
 Koshm, daughter of Arshavir (Phraates IV?), 705
 Kosmartydene/^d*Qus-mārtā-iddina*, 498
 Krasnaya Polana, plate from, 1118, 1121, 1128
krestyānē/marqionā, Christians, 930
 Krishna-Vishnu, 850
 Ksefarnug, 515
ksitigarbha, Buddhist holy guide, 619
kikhwī'y, head of family, 641, 704
 Kuang-te, 266
 Kucha/Kučā, capital of An-hsi, 268, 270, 616, 961
 manuscript fragments, 200
 Ta-yüan region(?), 541
 Kāshgar taken and lost, 543
 allegiance to the Wei state, 546
 and the silk trade, 549
 art sinicized, 556
 Kūchān, *see* Asaac
Kūdakīyya, 1001
 derivation of name, 1014
 Kuduk Köl, 269
kudurru documents, 498
 Kūfa, 488, 608, 1023
 religious heterodoxy in, 1003
 Kūh-i Khwājā's palace at, 455, 729, 844, 847, 866, 870, 1137
 palace, wall-paintings and stucco, 1044, 1048, 1052
 Kūh-i-Shakrak, fire altar, 13 and n. 4
 Kuji, king of Colchis, 514
 Kujula Kadphises / Kieu-tsieu-kio, first Kushān emperor, 198, 247, 1030
 chronology, 200
 Kük, *see* Seleucia-on-the-Tigris
kulāb, headdress, 403, 707
 Kültegin, Turkish prince, inscription, 621
 Kumārajīva, Kuchean translator, 961
 Kumaralāta, *Kalpanāmanḍitikā*, 205
kun, Bātīnī divine imperative, 1016
 Kunār Siyāh, temple, 1074–5
 Kundalavana, council of, 849
 Kung-yuēh, 549
kūni and *qadar*, in Bātīnī myth, 1016
 Kunlun range, 537
kūra, administrative unit, 732–3
 Kurdistan, 286
 Yazidis in Iraqi, 501
 Kurds, 496, 501, 677, 762
 Cossaei, 752, 766
 kurgans, 852
 Kuro-Araxes culture, 505
kursi, throne, 1006
 Kushāns, and empire, 82, 128, 137, 192, 397, 771
 expansion of empire, 83, 90, 198
 smallpox epidemic, 93
 wars with the Sasanians, 121, 127, 142; empire overthrown, 203, 334
 as Huns or Hepthalites, 142, 146
 letter forms, 195; language, 199–200, 953; of the rulers, 1254
 establishment of the empire, 197–8
 trade, 198, 756, 768
 Mediterranean contacts, 198
 clothing, 199
 chronology, 200–7 and n. 1, 247; table, 219
 religion, 204, 847–51, 902; Buddhism, 953–9 *passim*; visit of Mānī, 968
 successors to Kanishka I, 207
 Murunda coins, 207
 fall of dynasty, 209
 Sasanians against Kūshānshah, 210
 kingdom rises from Kwei-shwang, 247
 conquests of Chandragupta II, 247
 administration, 248
 control of the Silk Road, 548
 a Sasanian vice-royalty, 730
 and Khwārazm, 1139–40
 cultural influence on Sogdiana, 1141
see also coinage
 Kūshānshāhs, Sasanian governors of the Kushāns, 127, 209–10, 770
 coinage, 209, 247
 chronology, 209, 247

INDEX

- Kushtāīā, scribe of Mānī, 971
kustik, 1177–8
 Ku-tsang, 552
 Kuva, in Farghāna, 960
 Kuyuk-kala, cemetery, 1140
 Kwei-shwang/Kushān, 246
kwst, “side” or border territory, 731
kwzr, as name of a vineyard, 694
 Kyāusih/Kasaoya, Lake, 356
 identified with Lake Hāmūn, 356
 Kyuzeli-gyr, 244, 1135
 Kyzyl-kyr, 1142
- Labīd, poet, 609
 Labienus, Quintus, officer of Brutus and Cassius, 57
 joins Pacorus’ army to invade Syria, 57, 291
 opposed in second civil war by Publius Ventidius, 57
 death, 57
 Ladakh
 Nestorian cross, 617
 inscription, 1229
 Lahsā
 described by Nāṣir-i Khusrav, 1024
 Lajvard, busts from, 1090
 Lakhana Udayaditya, Hüna king, 214
 Lakhmids, Arab tribe and dynasty, 130, 488
 Sasanian buffer state of Hīra, 139
 raid Syria with Kavād, 152
 grievances against Byzantines, 155
 and southern Arabia, 157, 606
 growth of power, 157
 end of dynasty, 167, 487, 608
 Tayy chief becomes head of the tribe, 167
 Sasanian allies in Hīra, 596–602
Manādhira and *Nā'amina*, 597
 defeat at Qinnasrīn, 607
 Persian–Arab cultural bridge, 609, 612
Lalita-vistara, 206
 Lamaist cult, 862
lamella, 325
 Lampāka, 958
 land-survey of Kavād and Khusrav I, 746
 languages, 1149–1258
 Elamite, 13, 494; as a Persian “vehicle” language, 1252–3
 Iranian dialects, 13
 Aramaic, 13; Imperial, 494, 1151; of the surviving Mandaeans, 500–1; of the Fertile Crescent, 594; of Aśoka’s inscriptions, 950; of Mānī, 1162; a Persian “vehicle” language, 1251–3
 Greek, 17, 691–2, 930, 950, 1029; on Parthian coins, 1030; use in Parthian
- Iran, 1154; a dead-church language? 1159; in Bactria, 1254–6 and n. 1
 Parthian, 27, 1151–65 *passim*; Manichaean, 1162–3
 Pashto, 36, 200, 216–17
 Bactrian/Kushān-Bactrian, 137, 146, 199, 956, 1031, 1131, 1250–1, 1255–6
 Altaic, 137, 616
 Persian, spread in central asia, 176
 Agnean, 200
 Kucheans, 200, 961
 Tocharian, 200, 616, 961
 Indo-Scythian dialects, 200
 Khotanese, 265, 959, 964
 Prakrit, 265, 614, 964; Pāli, 849, 950; north-western, Gāndhāri, 950, 958–9
 Tumshuq, 265, 270
 Sogdian, 265, 270, 617, 621–4, 850, 852–3, 1131, 1217–20, 1258
 Yaghnōbi, 270, 1217
 Pahlavi/Middle Persian, 330, 613, 1169; and Old Turkish, 618–24 *passim*; Manichaean, 1163, 1196–7, 1204; inscriptions and their importance, 1205–15
 Chorasmian/Khwarazmian, 439, 1131, 1135, 1244–9; Avestan survivals in, 1248
 Babylonian, 494; interpenetration with Iranian, 493–6
 Old Persian, 494, 1150, 1220
 Akkadian, 495, 504
 Kurdish, 496; Yazidi dialect, 501
 Armenian, 514, 525, 569
 Syriac, 569–70, 930; in Hīra, 598; of Mānī’s works, 972
 Middle Iranian, Hepthalite, 614
 Saka, 614, 850, 1231–2, 1242
 Sanskrit, 614, 950, 964
 Old Turkish/Uighur, 617–18, 622–4
 New Persian, 624, 1166, 1169
 Laz, 764–5
 Mingrelian, 764–5
 Avestan, 1159, 1220
 Zoroastrian Pahlavi, 1169
 “vehicle” languages, 1251–4 and n. 1
 see also loan-words, scripts
 Lan-shih (Chinese name for Balkh), 541
 Laodice, wife of Antiochus III, 5, 307, 825
 Laodice, wife of Mithridates I Callinicus, 841
 Laodicea, harbour serving Antioch, 4
 Laodicea, *see* Nīhāvand
laser Parthicum/laser Cyrenaicum vel Parthicum, 546
 Lashom/*Išwmčyn*, province

INDEX

- law, 112, 133, 148, 503–4, 528, 576, 584, 627–80
 Seleucid parallel systems, 15
 Sasanian, 136
 external influences on development, 587, 680
 documents and sources, 627–31
 law “schools”, 629
 and social structure, 631–46
 legal capacity, 633–4, 642, 644; of slaves, 637–8
 and women, 634, 637–8, 642, 672, 679; *see also* family law, property law
 and slavery, 636–40, 672–4 and n. 1, 679, 929 n. 7; manumission, 639–40; leasing, 659
 proceedings, 676–9; courts and judges, 676–7; judicial process, 677–9; costs, 678; trial by ordeal, 679; court of the magupatān magupat, 679; in district and city, 734
 Greek, in Mesopotamia, 714, 716, 735
 law court payments to the king’s treasury, 722
 dating on legal documents, 789
 king’s open justice, 800
 and Jews under Shāpūr I, 914
 of Babylonian Jewry, 918
 torture, 934 and n. 7
 in the *Dēnkard*, 1175–6
see also family law, law of obligations, property law etc.
 law of obligations, 631, 669–76
 fines and warranty, 671
 joint liability, 671–2
 exchange agreements, 672
 loan contracts, 673–5
 power of attorney, 675–6
 Laz, tribe, 516, 521, 765
 Lazica/Machelonia, Georgian kingdom, 152–3, 155, 158, 520, 764, 767
 Byzantine alliance, 156
 foundation of the kingdom, 521
 between Persians and Byzantines, 521
 Lazistan, 520
 leases, 679–80
 leather, “Parthian”, 560
 Left, General of the, 547 and n. 1
 Legio Parthica, 561 n. 2
 Leucothea, sun goddess, 533
 Levi b. Sisi, 918
li, pottery vessel, 537
 “Li, Annals of”, 1234, 1238
 Liang, 552
 Liang-chou/Ku-tsang, 274
 Liang History, 550
- Lie, The, *see* Drug
 Li Hsien, 553
 Lihyān, 593
 Li Kuang-li, general of Emperor Wu-ti, 542
 Liliths, 920
limes, Roman fortifications, 137–8, 581, 758
 Lion Horoscope, 842
lipi-, writing, 494
 Li Sheng-t’ien / Viśa’ Saṃbhava, Khotan ruler, 268
 literature, 1149–1258 *passim*
andarz/wisdom literature, 134, 161, 398–400, 1168; Parthian, 1160; Zoroastrian Pahlavī, 1180–7
 on Persian history and legend, 359–66
 loss of western epic literature, 388–91
 factual histories, 391–3
 heroic and religious traditions, 394–7; Kayanian epic cycle, 461–5
 history as recreation, 400–1
 in Mesopotamia, 497
 Armenian, 514
 Georgian love of Persian, 526–7
 Irano-Byzantine influences, 582–3
 Khotanese, 964
 Parthian, 1151–64; oral nature, 1154–5; epic cycles, 1155–9; religious, 1159–60; non-Persian, 1161–2; Manichaean, 1162–4
 Greek literature and the Parthians, 1154
 Zoroastrian Pahlavī, 1166–95; epic, 1167; fiction, 1168; historiography, 1168–9; informative works, 1169, 1187–90; religious and scholastic survivals, 1170; eschatology, 1194–5
 Manichaean Middle Persian, 1196–1204
 Sogdian, 1221–9
 Khotanese Saka, 1233–40
see also myths and legends, poetry
Li yul lun-bstan-pa, late Tibetan text, 952, 958, 963
 loan-words
 in Persian, 493, 503–4
 in Babylonian languages, 495
 in Arabic, 496, 502–3, 610–11
 as Armenian proper names, 526; Georgian, 526
strata as, 563
 in Old Turkish/Uighur, 617–24 *passim*
 in Kök-Türk titles, 622
 in Prākrit, 950; from Prākrit, 959
 in Khotanese, 964
 Lob Nor, 273, 546
 Lodi, 217
 Lokottaravādins, Buddhist sect, 958
 Lou-Lan, 209, 550, 1256

INDEX

- Lo-yang, Tsin dynasty capital, 554, 959, 961, 1228
 destroyed, 211, 273
 Sera Metropolis, Silk Route terminus, 211
 Sarag, 275
 Lrooaspo, Kushān deity, 904
 Lucullus, 81, 85
 Roman general fighting Mithradates II, 46
 superseded by Pompey, 46
 against Tigranes the Great of Armenia, 516
 Luhrāsp/Aurvrat.aspa, father of Gushtāsp, 376, 385, 404, 411, 433, 437, 465–6, 468
 genealogy, 466
 book of, 475
lūlis, ancestor of the Indian gypsy, 145
 Lung Men, Buddhist caves of, 954
 Lung-yu, 267
 Lūristān, 498
 bronzes, 505
 Lurs, tribe, 752
 Lycia, 104
 Lycus river, 37
 Lydia, important centre of Persian influence, 100, 831, 846, 910
 Lysias, minister to Antiochus IV, 34
 Lysias, Macedonian family, holders of office in Dura-Europos, 717
 Lysimachus, 509
 Ma, national goddess of Cappadocia, 109
 Ma'add, 606
al-Ma'ārif, see Ibn Qutaiba
 Maccabean revolt, 910
 Macedon, kingdom of, 509
 Macedonians, 5, 6, 106–7, 112, 715, 717
 against eastern Iranians, 181–4
 Iranian Greek cities under, 1032
 Machelonia/*syk'n*, province, 706, 730, 731
 see also Lazika
 Macrinus, Roman emperor, successor to Caracalla, 95
 Madā'in/Māhoze, see Ctesiphon
madd'ā, defined, 974
 Madhariya
 birthplace of Māni? 998 and n. 2
 Ma'di Karib, son of Abraha, 158
 Ma'di Karib b. Saif b. Dhi Yazan, vassal ruler of the Yemen, 607
Mādiyān i Yoīt i Fryān, 1160
Mafātiḥ ul-'ulūm, see Khwārazmī
Mafrāyānā of Antioch, 947
 Magadha, 949–50
 Magi/Magians, 17 and n. 1, 501–2, 554, 567, 585, 633, 733, 775, 838, 843, 857
 fire-kindlers, 103
giristan-i mughān, 449
 Tiridates I of Armenia as, 518
magu- > *moy*, 632
magus[ēhrpat], 878
 on the Parthian supreme council, 689
 in the Seleucid period, 826–31
 and the Oracles of Hystaspes, 831–3
 and Indian sun-worship, 850–1
 and Mithraism, 853
 persecutors of Christians, 934
 and the royal *xvaranah*, 935
 see also magupat
magistor, 971 and n. 3
 Magnesia, battle of, 303, 306, 512
 Magnesia ad Maenam, 821
magu-/μάγος, derivation of, 827
magupat/mōbad/magian, 394–5, 397–8, 401–3, 406, 630, 633, 676, 706, 708, 732, 736 n. 3
 and Māni, 500
 functions, 733–4, 882 and n. 4
 meaning of the term, 880
 and the Sasanian royal succession, 888
 genealogy of great *mōbad* families, 1193
 powers exaggerated, 1272
 see also magi
magupatān *magupat/mōbadān mōbad*, high priest, 134, 148, 890, 997, 1006 and n. 6, 1272
 judicial functions, 629, 677, 679
 role in the Sasanian succession, 689–90
 head of the social hierarchy, 942
 Magusians, 1210
 Māh, central Media, 752, 762, 766–7, 968
Mahābhārāta, 394, 446
 Māhān, noble counsellor, 713
mahā rāja, 494 n. 2
Mahārājakanikalekhā, 206
 Mahāsāṅghikas, Buddhist faction, 951, 953, 963, 1234
Vinaya of, 958
Mahāvībhāṣa, commentary on the Buddhist canonical texts, 204
 Mahāyāna/Buddhist “Great Vehicle”, 205, 263, 267, 555, 849, 951, 957–8, 961–2, 1234
 rise associated with Gandhāran art, 955–6
 in Khotan, 962, 964
Sūrangamasamādbisūtra, 964
Vimalakirtinirdeśasūtra, 964
 literature, 1222
Mahāyana-śraddhotpādaśāstra, 205
 Mahbod, general of Khusrav II, 916
 al-Mahdi, caliph, 1003
 Mahdi b. Firuz, son of Fātimā, 1008, 1010
 as Kūdak-i Dānā, 1014

INDEX

- Māh Fravartin*, *rōz Hordāt*, 1194
Māh-Gušnasp, son of Mihr-Narseh, 633
Māhin, female successor to Maues, 196
mabistag / **masistag* / *mānsālār* / *mānsardār*,
 a category of the Manichaean elect, 986
Māhōē, marzbān of Marv, 172, 404
Māhōzē Madā'in, *see* Ctesiphon
mahr, marriage-portion, 1001
Mahraspand, 140, 630
māshabīlā, defined, 974
Māhyāra, monastery, 1242
Maidhyārya, one of the *gāhāmbārs*, 795
Maidhyōī-ṣamā, Festival of the Waters, one of
 the *gāhāmbars*, 442, 795
Maidhyōī-ṣarāmaya, one of the *gāhāmbārs*, 795
Maiferqat, *see* Martyropolis
Maimargh, 546
Maimmūn al-Qaddāh, Bātinī activist, 1015
Maiozamatcha, 1270
Maiphernes, official of the Iranian mint,
 106
Maira, 194
 well inscription, 194
Maišan, *see* Characene
Maitreya, 556
majbūl vowels, 370
Maka/Myci, tribe, 777
Makrān, 130, 729, 730, 858, 968
Maktaks, religious sect, 882, 907–8, 965 n. 5
Malak Tā'ūs/Peacock-angel, 501
Malalas of Antioch, 995, 997, 1013
Malaya, Malays, 755, 756
Malkā dbi 'Arabb, title of *vlg's*, lord of Hatra,
 596
Malkūsh/Mahrkūsa, 357
Malli, 185
Mamikonian family of Armenia, 159, 530
 ancestor Mamgon, 530
Mamikonian, Manuel, 531
Mamikonian, Mushagh, *sparapet* of King
 Pap, 530
Mamikonian, Vahan, nephew of Vardan,
 148
 peace with Armenian rebels, 149
Mamikonian, Vardan, Prince of Armenia,
 147, 521
Māmkuyas, 266
al-Ma'mūn, caliph, 1191
Ma'nā, Bishop, 947
Manādbira, *see* Lakhmids
Mandada, 389
Mandaean, sometimes called Sabians or
 Nazoreans, 836–9 *passim*, 860, 882,
 907, 929, 930 n. 7
 of southern Babylonia, 500–1
 and Māni, 966–7, 972–80 *passim*
 Sabians and the origins of the ghulāts,
 1002
 Ṣabeans, and Bātinis, 1015
 Manes, state official, 736
 Māneža, Afrāsiyāb's daughter, 456, 458, 464
 Māni, religious leader and prophet, 95, 128,
 361, 369, 387 n. 1, 399, 616, 782–3 and
 n. 4, 860, 881, 960, 1163, 1182
Shāpūrakān, 95, 500, 857, 929, 969, 972;
 language, 1196–7, 1198 n. 2
 his Arsacid values, 97
 date of death, 119
Kephalaia, 333, 968–9, 972, 983, 1201
 his life, 500, 965–72; baptist-Mandean
 period, 965–70; Mithraic period, 970;
 and Bahram I, 970–2
 missionary journeys, 858, 968–70
 as Buddha, 861, 989
 and Shāpūr I, 879, 969
 and Hormizd I, 880, 970
 "The Living Gospel"/*Evangelion*, 972,
 1198–9
 "The Treasure of Life"/*Niyān i Zindagān*,
 972, 1199
Pragmateia, 972, 1199
 "The Book of Mysteries"/*Rāzān*, 972,
 1199
 "The Book of the Giants"/*Kawān*, 972,
 1199
 "The Letters"/*Diwān*, 972, 1199–1200
 the Paraclete, 984
 and the "Hymn of the Pearl", 1162
 writings, 1196–1201
Wuzurgān Āfrīwan, 1200
Qūdāgān Āfrīwan, 1200
Ārdahang / Artank, painting, 1200–1;
Ārdahang Wifrās, 1201
Maniak, Sogdian envoy, 617
Manichaeism, Manichaeans, 131, 139, 150,
 176, 395, 436, 563, 630, 664 and n. 1,
 770, 834, 853, 928–9, 939
 Arsacid syncretic doctrine, 97
 east of the Pamirs, 272–4
 Uighur, 273, 619–21, 862
 foundation and spread of, 500
 in Armenia and Georgia, 536
 in China, 554–5
 abhorrent to Byzantines and Sasanians,
 586–7
 Sogdian texts, 616, 1202, 1223–5
 property confiscated, 630, 734
 time-reckoning, 786
 and the origins of gnosis, 836–9
 Iranian origins, 856–7
 development of Iranian, 858–63
 and Zurvanite-Zoroastrian ideas, 858–60

INDEX

- Manichaeism (*cont.*)
 and subversion, 862
 under the Sasanians, 879–97 *passim*
Zurvān, supreme god, 900, 938
 as *zandik*, 907, 997
 and Iranian monasticism, 945 n. 3
 and Buddhism, 960, 968
 Iranian background, 965–90
 Truth in, 967
 and Christianity, 972, 984, 987, 1198–9
Māni's system, 972–84
 texts, 972–3; language of, 972, 1162–3
dō bun, 973
 gods and demons, 973–80
 the Saviour, 980–3
 divine Wisdom, 982–3
 predecessors, 983–4
 organisation and cult, 985–6; precepts, 985; elect and hearers, 985–6; *Bema*, 985–6
 spread of, 986–90
 extinction, 990
 and Mazdakism, 992, 995–9 *passim*, 1007, 1009
 writings, 1196–1204
 central Asian communities, 1219
 Bactrian text, 1257–8
 Manisares, Parthian vassal, 88
Manjusinairātmyāvalārasūtra, 269
 Māneshrā, Aśoka rock edict at, 950
 al-Mansūr, caliph, 490, 1003
 Manu, 425, 433–4, 444
 Manūchihir/Manuščiōra, legendary hero, 385, 391, 400, 402 n. 4, 404, 407, 415, 431–2, 433–4, 435, 441, 444, 447, 454, 463, 654
 avenges Ēraj's death, 372–3
 his successor, 434–5
 campaigns against Salm and Tūr, 457
 Manūchihrs, on Persis coins, 305
 Manuščihr, 899, 1191
 author of *Dātastān i Dēnik*, 417, 442, 630, 899–900, 1186, 1191, 1194
 Manush, 433
 Maotun, king of the Hsiung-nu tribe, 191
 Maqdisi, 1005, 1007–9, 1281
 author of *Kitāb al-bad' wa'l-ta'rīkh*, 362
 as source for Mazdakism, 1007–13 *passim*
 Maqṣūdābād, inscriptions, 1212
 Mara, "Lord", 532
 Mar Aba, patriarch of Seleucia-Ctesiphon, 573, 896, 930
 synod, 946
 Marāgha, *see* Afrāh-rōdh
 Marāghis, alleged Mazdakites, 1006
 Marakanda, *see* Samarkand
 Maral-baši/Barčuq, village, 269–70
 Mar Ammo, disciple of Māni, 861, 970, 972
 Marand, 59, 64
 Mār 'Aqaq, Synod of, 944
 Marathon, battle of, 181
 Mār Bābay, Synod of, 944
 Marcionites, 930
 Marcion, 983–4
mard i abrāv, 417 and n. 3
 Mardians, tribesmen of Māzandarān, 31, 61 and n. 3
 Mardi/Amardi, 88, 766
 Amardi/Mardi, 766
 Mārdin, 46 n. 3
 Marduk, 427, 502
 Mardūt, wife of Ardashir I, mother of Shāpūr I, 708, 713
 Margiana, 43, 438, 726
 Romans from Carrhae deported here, 55
 Marsus/Margus, 62
 mint, 283, 287
 Mār Hazeqiel, synod of, 946
 Maria, purported wife of Khusrau II, 500, 579
 Mariades/Cyriades, 935 n. 3, 1083 n. 1
 Ma'tib, 602
 dam, 604, 605
 Ma'tiq, villa at, 1088
 marja', 1024
 mark-āržān, defined, 679
 Mār Māri
 "History of the Apostle Mār Māri", 926–7
 Mar' al-Qais/Imru' al-Qais al-Bad', Lakhmid ruler of Hira, 598
 al-Namāra inscription of, 610
 marriage, 879, 904, 979
 Iranian royal, 68, 410, 825; Byzantine, 579
kbw ēdōdab/xvaētvadatba/xwētokdas, close-kin marriage, 68, 293 n. 1, 644, 938; incestuous, 644; origins, 417, 472
 agnatic, 434
 "without full rights", 703
 and Mazdakism, 999–1000; Khurramī rites, 1010–12
 čakārī, 1000
 "plenary", 1190
see also divorce, dowry, family law etc.
 Mār Šimōn Act, 934
 Marsus, Vibius, Roman governor, 728
 Martak, 629
 Mārtānda/Mortal Seed, Vedic, 418–19
 Martbūt, magupatān magupat, 641, 891
mart i šahr, defined, 634

INDEX

- Martyropolis/Maferqat, 143, 164, 591, 752, 764, 936, 940
see also Tigranocerta
- Mar'Uqba, exiliarch, 919
- Mārūtā, bishop of Maferqat, 143, 936, 940
- Mārūtā of Tagrit, 947
- Marv/Antiochia-in-Margiana, 43, 82, 130, 258, 404, 450, 705, 770, 822
 fortifications of Antiochus I, 5, 237
 potters, 15
 Sasanian sub-king, 124
 Arab-Sasanian conflict, 172
 military centre of the Sasanian empire, 175
 Sakas destroy the city, 186
 Kushān mint, 210
 inhabitants eliminated, 216
 Khwarazmian occupation, 439
 on the Silk Road, 548, 738
 Parthian royal residence at, 709
 and Sasanian centralisation, 729–31
 Syrians in, 739 and n. 3
 Christian organisation, 932 and n. 5
- māryā*, 596
- marzban, 142, 145, 147, 152, 726, 732
 in Khurāsān, 172
 of Marv, 172
 in Armenia and Iberia, 529
marzubān al-bādiya, 600–1
 margravates, 750
 in the Nisā documents, 1263
- Māsabdhān/Massabatice, 754, 1009
- Mashkenā dhe Kurdū, Nestorian diocese of, 752
- Mashya, 370, 385, 416–17, 420–1, 425
- Mashyāna, 370, 416–17, 420–1, 425, 859
- Masis/Ararat, 506
- Masjid-i Sulaimān, 871
 terrace at, 1042–3, 1046 and n. 1
- maškum/maškā*, defined, 495
- Masrūq b. Abraha, ruler of South Arabia, 606–7
- Massagetae, *see* Chionites
- Massice/Besēhana/Pérōz-Shāpūr/al-Anbār, 70, 724, 759, 1269
 battle at, 125
 rebuilding of armoury at, 485
- Mas'ūdi, author of *Murij al-dhabab* and *Kitāb al-tanbih wa'l-ishrāf*, 361–2, 386, 391–3, 398, 401, 410–11, 421, 434–5, 440, 469, 1023
 on Ardashir's portrait, 392
 on the religious work of Khusrau I, 895
 on the Mazdakites, 996–7; Mazdak I, 1015
 contact with Khurramis, 1005
 on a Khusrau II seal, 1099
 on weaver settlements, 1107–8
 source-value assessed, 1280
- mātak*, defined, 655, 676
- Mātakdān (*Mātigān*) i hazār dāstān, Sasanian Law Book by Farraxvārāt i Vahrāmān, 587, 628–31, 636–78 *passim*, 743, 891, 895, 904, 1189–90, 1278
 on horsemen and warrior-slaves, 700
 on city and district administration, 726–7, 732–4 *passim*
- Mathurā, 851, 200 n. 1
 Lion Capital inscription, 195, 1230
 expansion of the Kushān empire, 198–9
 school of Buddhist sculpture, 206
 Bactrian influence on Kushān sculpture, 1049
- Mātracēta, convert to Buddhism, 206–7
Satapāñcāśaika, Varṣārāhavarṇastotrā, 207
- Mattiua(z)a, a Mitanni prince, 412
- Mauakes/Maues, leader of the Sakas, 182
- Maues/Moga, first Indo-Scythian ruler 191, 194–5
 coinage, 194, 1030
- Maurice/Maurikios, 159, 162
 new Byzantine emperor, 163–4
 gained territories from Khusrau II, 165–6
 daughter Maria, 166, 579
 death, 167, 523
 and Armenia, 522–3
 and fugitive Khusrau II, 574
 letter from Khusrau II, 577–8
- Maurya empire, 185
- Seleucus invades, 185
 ruler Chandragupta, 185
 gains Paropamisadae and Arachosia, 186
 disintegration, 189
- dynasty, 950
 extent of, 951
 court art, 1047
- mawāli*, 1002, 1015, 1022–3
- mawdīānā*, “confessor”, 937
- Maximian, Roman emperor, 210
- māyā*, magical power, 344
- Mayid, Indian tribe, 776
- māyyā*, water, 938
- Mazaca, Cappadocian city, 110
 refounded as Eusebeia, 112
- Māzandarān, 160, 215, 374, 421
 expedition, 348, 445
 original location, 446–7
 tomb-inscriptions, 1212
- Mazar Tagh, 269
- Mazar Toghrak, 269
- Mazdaism/Zoroastrian religion, *see* Zoroastrianism
- Mazdak, son of Bāmdād, 150, 369, 399
 execution, 151
 and Kavād, 892–3

INDEX

- Mazdak (*cont.*)
 as Mazdak the Younger, 995–6
 life and teachings, 998–1000
 in the *Vendidad* and Shahristānī, 1012
 and the Bātinīs, 1015
 Mazdakism
 Mazdakites, 136, 149–51, 392, 395, 398,
 406, 583 991–1024
 as social revolutionaries, 151, 153, 160,
 863, 892–3, 945–6, 991, 998–1000,
 1002–5 *passim*, 1013
 in Mecca, 600
 and “The Letter of Tansar”, 690
 and Zoroastrianism, 991, 995–1000 *passim*,
 1007, 1018–21 *passim*
 and Manichaeism, 992, 995–9 *passim*, 1007
 sources, 993–5
 origins, 995–8
 life and teachings of Mazdak, 998–1000
 persecution under Khusrau I, 999–1001
 regions where numerous, 1001
 under Islam, 1001–6
 associated sects, 1003–4; extremist Shi‘is,
 1001–3; Khurramīs, 1004–6; Bātinīs,
 1014–16; Qarmatīs, 1023–4
 doctrine, 1006–18; from Shahristānī,
 1006–8; from Khurramī evidence,
 1008–12; ethical contradictions, 1012–
 13; saints, 1013–14; from Bātinī
 evidence, 1016–18
 summary of history, 1018–24
 and Carpocratian teachings, 1020
Mazdak-nāmag, 994, 1168
 Mazdayasnian faith/Zoroastrian religion,
see Zoroastrianism
 Māzīyāriyya, Mazdakites, 1004
 Mazūn, *see* ‘Umān
m’dknpt/m’dknpty, title of the commander of
 the royal bodyguard, 711
md’l/mdkdr, cup-bearer, 711
mdwrn, collectors of wine, 745
mdwstn, wine storehouse, 681
 Mean, the
 in Mazdean ethics, 1180
 Meander river, 106
 measurements, 503, 576, 624, 662, 708
 Babylonian, 501
 one-sixth, 503–4
 Graeco-Roman, 1159
 see also time-reckoning
 Mebarsapes, ruler of Adiabene, 88
 Mecca, 172, 600
 Medes, 107, 181, 366, 389, 391, 481, 484
 rulers of eastern Iranian nations, 181
 Magi, priesthood of, 501–2, 827
 loss of Media Atropatena, 513
 customs and dress, 525
 Media, 76, 79, 299, 390, 438, 467, 486, 519,
 705, 714, 728, 730, 762
 communications with Seleucid capital,
 13
 language, 27; writing, 1161
 Parthian advance, 31
 Antiochus IV, governor, 32
 Timarchus, 33
 Antiochus VII advances, 37
 governed by Mithradates III, 48
 King Artavasdes I, 65
 village organisation, 110
 Egypt invades, 187
 slavery, 635
 geography, 762, 765–7
 centre of Zurvanism, 974
 see also Azarbāijān, Māh
 medicine, 573
 medical texts, 553, 1229, 1233–4
 asafoetida, 564
 rhubarb, 565
 Medina, the former Yathrib, 611
 Jews of, 600–1, 607
 medina, administrative divisions, 725
megistanae, Armenian barons, 85
 Meherdates, grandson of Phraates IV, 76
 pretender to Parthian throne, 77–8
 life spared by Gotarzes II, 78
 Meherdotes, brother of Osrōes, 91
 Meherr (a form of Mithra), the Great, Lion
 of Sassoun, 534
 Melchites, 963
Melea persike/Persike, 565
 Melitene/Malatiya, 85, 88
 Menander, 188
 against the Eucratides, 190
 kingdom at Pushkalāvati, 190
 coins, 190 and n. 1, 848
 and the *Milinda-pāñha*, 190, 848, 952
 Buddhist patron, 952
 Mencius, the sage, 1020
mēnōg, 1192
 defined, 386
 dualism of *gētig* and, 837, 859
Mēnōg i Kbrad/Mēnōk i Xrat, 418, 430, 432,
 442, 1182, 1194
 Mercury, 498, 526
 Mesene / Mēshān / Mēsān / Mēshān / Maišān /
 Charax, *see* Characene
 Meshik, battle at, 519
 Mēshūn-Shāh, title of ruler of dependent
 Characene, 594
mēshāyā, Marcionites, 930
 Mēshā-Zekā, 925
 Mesopotamia, 38, 52–3, 55, 73–4, 77, 88–9,
 120, 138–9, 379, 380, 426, 448, 481–504,
 593, 714, 727, 735, 1107

INDEX

- Mesopotamia (*cont.*)
 Northern Mesopotamia / Arabistān /
 Arabia, 89, 124
 Romans invade, 93, 117, 128, 483, 484
 Artabanus IV gains control, 94
 agricultural wealth of the Sasanians, 121
 recovered from Romans by Sasanians, 130
 Roman–Sasanian conflict, 137–8, 485–6,
 519
 Byzantines in, 152
 Byzantine–Sasanian conflict, 170
 Arab conquest, 174, 486
 Egypt invades, 187
 and Sasanian art, 336
 Cyrus takes possession, 481
 designs of Alexander the Great, 482
 under the Seleucids, 482–3, 509, 593
 under the Arsacids, 483–4
 under the Sasanians, 484–6
 religion, 485, 497–501, 838
 new townships, 487–91
 art, 492–3; the *aivan*, 1049–50; Parthian
 frontality, 1049–51; early stelae, 1078
 language, 493–6
 literature, 496
 science, 501–2
 music, 502
 cuisine, 503
 measurements, one-sixth, 503–4
 geographical barriers, 505
 Seleucid and Parthian polis in, 714–22
 trade, 739–40, 759
 Parthian poll-tax, 745
 Jews, 911–20 *passim*, 921
 glass production, 1105
 see also Babylonia, Iraq
 Mesrop Mashtotz/Maštoc^c, St, 522, 573
 metal
 mythical use of, 371
 molten stream, destroyer of evil ones, 835
 ordeal by molten, 887
 Šaθrēvar, patron of, 903
 Mētyōmāh/Mētō(k)māh, 629, 1171, 1177
mgostani, Georgian, 536, 1155
 see also *gōšān*
mgwš, “magus”, 868
mbysty, 700
miao, defined, 554
midraš, 1172
 Mihirakula, son of Skandagupta, ruler of
 Punjab, 214
 Mihr, great warrior and protector, 797, 798,
 802, 804
 major Zoroastrian deity, 902, 1194
 see also Mithra
 Mihr, the Archedgos, 861
 Mihrāb, king of Kābul, 374, 426, 453
 Mihragān, festival, 136, 793–4, 801–3, 805,
 902
 “Lesser” and “Greater”, 807
 and calendar changes, 805–11 *passim*
 Mihrājan-qadhaq, 754, 1009
 Mihrak, enemy of Ardashir, 380, 1188
 Mihrān family, 163, 520, 528, 640, 704
 Mihrdat, 313
mihrdātakān, as name of a vineyard, 694
 Mihrdātkart, fortress at Nisā, *see* Nisā
 Mihriya, 861
 Mihr-Narseh, prime minister of Yazdgard I
 and II and Bahram Gor, 146, 148, 395,
 475, 628, 630, 633
 “Hazārbandak”, 635
 as sacred slave, 640
 Firūzābād bridge and inscription of, 661–
 2, 682, 1209
 endowment of temples by, 662, 891
 member of the Spendiād family, 704
 as prime minister, 889–91, 940–1
 Mihr-Öhrmazd, an *Andarz* of, 1181
 Mihrān Xusrav, 1181
 Mihrshāh, uncle of Shāpūr of Mesene, 126
 Mihrshāh, governor of Mesene, 968
 Mihr-Shāpūr, chief of the magi, 890
 Mihryazd, *see* Mithra
 Milād/Mithradates, legendary warrior, 406,
 455, 459, 1156
 Milād b. Jurjin, 475
 Milēs, bishop of Susa, 931
 Milesian settlers, 533
 Miletus, 824
Milinda-pañha, *see* Menander
 miniature painting, 497, 500, 503, 622, 1131
 minotaur, 443
 mints, 331–5
 see also Susa, Ecbatana, Seleucia-on-the-
 Tigris
 Miqlāsiya, 861
 Mirān, site of frescoes in Gandhara style,
 209, 959, 1138
 and the Silk Road, 548
 Mirian III, king of Iberia, Christian saint,
 520
 Mishkīnshahr, inscription at, 1209
 Mishna, 499
 Miskawaih, 1281
 Tajārib al-umam, 1183
 Jāvidān Xirad, 1184–5
mīr, armed camp, 608
 Mitanni kings, 412
miθra, “agreement”, 669
 Mithra/Mitra, 305, 325, 328, 343–4, 412,
 414, 425, 532, 566, 801, 823, 830, 870,
 880, 889, 902, 956, 1100
 Zeus/Ahuramazda/Mithra, 113

INDEX

- Mithra (*cont.*)
 dwelling of, 351
 and Gayōmard, 418
 in Armenia, 534
 at Nimrūd Dāgh, 535
 Mithra/Mihr, 798
 Mihragān, festival of, 801–3
 in India, 850–1
 conversion of cult into mysteries, 853
 in Vedic and early Sanskrit records, 853–4
 and Manichaeism, 857, 859; as Mihryazd,
 977–8
see also Mihr
- Mithradādkart, citadel of Nisā, *see* Nisā
- Mithradates I, Arsacid king, 18, 36, 39, 281–
 2, 455, 686, 719, 735, 871
 Parthian expansion, 31–4, 307
 wife Rhodogune, 35
 coinage, 281–3, 303–4, 719
 conqueror of Babylon, 483
 middle son of Pripatius, 688
- Mithradates II, successor to Artabanus II,
 31, 39, 41, 72, 73, 76, 307, 688
 coinage, 40, 284–7, 304, 309, 311, 325
 against Artavasdes I, 40
 against Gotarzes I, 43
 rock-sculpture at Bisitūn, 78
 holds Tigranes the Great, 516
- Mithradates III, brother and rival of Orodes
 II, 48, 49
 coinage, 48, 289
 attacks Babylonia, 49
 Roman sympathizer, 50, 61
 death, 79
- Mithradates IV, 93, 735, 1153 n. 8
 coinage, 93, 297
- Mithradates VI Eupator, of Pontus, 44–6,
 111–12, 515–16
 defeat by Pompey, 114
- Mithraism, 566–7, 802, 834, 850, 1011 n. 2
 the Iranian contribution to the rise of the
 Mithraic mysteries, 853–6
 Mithraeum, 854–5, 871
 and Manichaeism, 856–7
 and Mānī, 970
- Mithrane, son of Orontes II, 508
- Mithras, high priest at Armavīr, 512
- Mithra Yasht, *see* Yashts
- Mithridates, rival of Gotarzes II, 691–2, 704
- Mithridates I Callinicus, of Commagene, 841
- Mitravana, temple at, 850–1
- Miyāfāqin (modern Silvan), location of
 Tigranocerta, 46
- Mjei Gnumi, Armenian commander, 523
- MLK' */stldl'n/b̄strdry*, 700 and n. 4
 MLKT' *n/bndrykpty*, priests, 690
- MLKT' *n/bndrykpty*, “adviser of Queens”, 713
- MLKT' *n MLKT'*, king's senior wife, 707,
 712
- Mnesimachos, 660
- mōbad, *see* magupat
- mōbadān mōbad, *see* magupatān magupat
- Moga, *see* Maues
- Mokhā, 605
- Monaeses, opponent of Phraates IV, 58, 60
 Roman campaign in Parthia, 60–1
 Roman–Parthian conflict in Armenia, 83
- monasticism
 Monophysite, 944
 Manichaean, 945 n. 3
- Mongolia, 540, 616, 989
 Turkish migration eastwards, 215
- Mongol invasion, 216, 1166, 1217
 control by the Hsien-pi, 545–6
- Outer Mongolia, 543, 549
- Monobazus, sub-king of Armenia, 83
- Monophysite Christianity, Monophysites,
 157, 573
 allegiance, 158
 persecution, 167, 896
 disputes with Nestorians, 171, 174, 942–4
 heretics in Byzantium, 584
 in the Yemen, 604–5
 under Khusrau II, 946
 hierarchy of, 947
- monopolies, state, 741, 745
 silk, 571
 balsam, 739
 of Justinian, 549, 570
- Montanism, 839
- months
 Macedonian/Seleucid, 292
 names, 779–89 *passim*, 804, 868
 Old Persian, table, 812
 Zoroastrian, table, 814–15
- mosaics, 1064–5, 1088–9
 1127 and n. 1
- Moschi, tribesmen, 81
- Moses of Khorene, 512, 529, 750, 1157 n. 2,
 1275
- Moskhoi, land of the, (Samtskhe), 533
- Mossynoeci, 513
 “Mother-Epicleses”, 840
- Motsai/Mei-ts'ai, ruler of Ta-yuan, 243
- Mount Mugh, Tājikistān, documents, 615,
 647, 868, 960, 1218, 1228
- Mount St Thomas, Madras, Christian cross
 of, 1212
- Mōuru, 438
- moxrapāt*, ash worship, 938
- MR'HY, title, 705, 706, 708, 713
- MR'TH, title, 713
- MR'Y MLK', 704

INDEX

- mrz̄p̄n/mrz̄yb̄n*, *see marzbān*
 Mshatta, 612
Mšīha Zkha, *see “Arbela, Chronicle of”*
mtkdr, supply officer, 711
 Mtskheta, 80, 514–15, 1121
 Sasanian garrison, 152
 powerful kings, 520
 inscriptions, 736
 Persian immigrants in, 764
 Mu, Chinese king and his miraculous journey, 537 and n. 1
 Mu'ain, martyrdom of, 886
Mubayyida, 1004
 name given to extremist Shi'is, 1001
 Mazdakites of Transoxiana, 1003
Mudabbir al-khair, Mazdakite Manager of Good, 1006
 Mudar, north Arab tribe, 598, 601
al-mugħtasila, “baptists”, 907, 965 and n. 5
 Mugua/Mu-Kua, ruler of Ta-yuan, 243
 Muhammad, prophet, 158, 486, 523, 606,
 610–11
 and the Yemen, 607–8
 and the Abū Sa'idis, 1024
 Muhammad b. al-Hanafiyya, 1002, 1023
 Muhammad b. Ismā'il, Bātīni imām, 1016–17
 Muhammad b. al-Jahm, 419
Muhammira, name given to extremist Shi'is, 1001
 Mazdakites, 1003
 Muharraq, bishopric on, 757
mubr, the Manichaean seal, 985
 Mujān, 1231
Mujmal al-tawārikh wa'l-qisas, 363, 435, 994,
 1004, 1279
 Mukhtār, 1002
 factions among followers, 1002 n. 3
 Muki, king of Sakas, 194
 Mu Kua, Ta-yuan prince, 542
 Mūlasarvāstivāda, Buddhist sect
 Dharmagupta, Mahīśāsaka and Kāśyapiya subdivisions, 963
muluk al-tawā'iif, tribal kings, 378, 387,
 475
 al-Mundhir I, Lakhmid ruler of Hīra, 144,
 381–2, 598
 al-Mundhir III, 152, 488
 and the Sasanians, 600–2
 and Dhū Nuwās, 605
 death, 606
 ends the War of Basūs, 609
 al-Mundhir b. al-Hārith, Ghassānid ruler,
 607
al-Muqanna', 1003
Muqanna'iyya, Mazdakites, 1004
 al-Muqtadir, caliph, 213
 Muraighān, inscription, 606
Murdiyānag/Eve, 859, 979
 Murena, 111
 Murtuq, 270, 272, 1232
Muriū al-dhabab, *see Mas'ūdī*
 al-Musayyib b. Bishr al Riyāhi, 260
 Mush, 513
mu-shē, 554
 music, 205, 502, 1167
 in Manichaicism, 1202–3
Mustaħbar-nāmak, 630
 Mustaufi, Ḥamd-Allāh, 1005–6
 Mutalammis, poet, 609
 Mutawakkilī, 9th-century author, 999
mutawalli, trustees, 664
 Muthannā b. Ḥāritha al-Shaibāni, leader of the Bakr b. Wā'il, 608
mwḡn hħarġ-pi, priests, 664, 690
myaqd, consecrated offerings, 417, 795–6,
 1178
 Mysia, satrapy of, 507
myi'ñ MLKT', title, 708
 myths and legends
 in Iranian common beliefs, 343–58;
 creation myths, 349–58
 time-span of the world, 355 and n. 4
 in traditional history, 366–88 *passim*
 (sources, 359–66); of western and southern Iran, 388–91; of Iran, 416–73
 (sources, 412–16); as recreation, 400–1
 absence of Medes and Achaemenians in, 389
 noble ancestors in, 458–9; 1156
 associations with festivals, 798, 801–3
mzdysn bgy, appellation of Sasanian kings, 694–5
mzn'sppi, commander-in-chief of the horse, 704
 Nā'amina, *see* Lakhmids
 Naarda/Nearda/Nehardēā, *see* Nehardea
 Nabagaf village, 717
nabānāzdrīta-, defined, 644, 646
 Nabataeans, 593, 755
 Nābigha al-Dhubyāni, 609
 Nabū, 803
 Nabu-na'id, 447–8, 593
 al-Nadir, Jewish tribe of, 601
 Naďira, daughter of al-Ḍaizān b. Mu'āwiya,
 491, 596
 Nadr b. al-Ḥārith, rival of Muhammad, 611–12
nāf, agnatic group, 642, 694
nāfapati/nabapei, agnatic council head, 644
 Nagarāhāra, 956–7

INDEX

- Nāgārjuna, 206–7
 founder of the Mādhyamika school, 208
 inspiration for Buddha sculpture, 208
Subṛllekha, *Mahāprajñāpāramitāśāstra*,
Mahānāvīmśikā, *Vigrabhayavartani*, 208
- Nāgārjunakonda, archaeological site named after Nāgārjuna, 208
- nahapetk'* *tanuterk'*, 704
- nahn*, ceremony of purification, 904
- Nahr 'Isā canals, *see* canals
- Nahr al-Malik, the Royal Canal, *see* canals
- Nahr Tirag/Nahr Tirē, a mint-city, 753
- nai*, flute, 502
- Nāin, 430
- Najd, 596, 600, 601, 602, 606
- Najrān, 604, 605
- nakharars*, Armenian nobles, 145, 530
- Nakhvirgān, Persian marzbān of Hīra
- Nakīsā, Sasanian musician-poet, 1167
- Nālāndā, 206
- Namāra, inscription, 488, 598, 610
- nāmburtārib*, defined, 646
- Namrāl, demon, 979
- Namrūd, 447
- Namupat, son of Artaxerxes, 305
- Nana, Babylonian goddess, 849, 867
- Nanaia, *see* Arədvī Sūrā
- Nanda, Buddha's half-brother, 205
- Nānhaitya/Nāsatya, 348
- naujot*, ceremony, 643 n. 1
- Naotairyā, 435
- Naotaras, the house of Naudhar, *see* Naudhar
- Naqsh-i Rajab, 392
- inscription of Kartir, 683, 706, 883, 1210–11
- “investiture relief” of Ardashir, 1079–80 and n. 3
- “investiture relief” of Shāpūr I, 1082–3; inscription, 682, 1208
- Naqsh-i Rustam, rock-reliefs and inscriptions, 120, 126, 129, 325, 1124 n. 4
- tomb of Darius I, 494 n. 3, 1081
- tower-temple, 506
- “investiture relief” of Ardashir I, 695, 864, 1079–80 and n. 3, 1081–2
- of Bahrām II, 1084–5
- “investiture relief” of Narseh, 1085 of Hormizd II, 1085
- see also* Ka'ba-yi Zardusht
- nāraka*, 619
- Narayana, sovereign of Kumēdh, 259
- Narēmān, son of Karshāp, 430, 432–3, 453
- Narisah/Nairyō.sanha/Narsē, 353, 859
- Narisah/Narisaf, the Manichaean Third Messenger, 978–9
- Narisah/Nēryosang, messenger of Ahura Mazdā, 977
- Narsē, in Zurvanite myth, 979
- Narsēdukt, junior wife of Narseh, king of Sakastān, 713
- Narseh, fourth son of Shāpūr I, 126–30, 410, 477, 702, 736–7
- Sasanian empire in his reign, 130
- coinage, 328
- as Great King of Armenia, 517
- Great King of Iran, 520
- struggles for the succession, 692–3, 881, 884
- “party” of, 699
- and Sakastan, 729
- ruler of “Sakastan, Tūrestān and Hind up to the sea”, 701, 707
- enthroned by the council of nobles, 708
- religion under, 884–5, 936
- investiture relief at Naqsh-i Rustam, 1085
- inscription at Bishāpūr, 1209
- see also* Paikuli inscriptions
- Narseh, son of Hormizd, inscription of, 682, 699
- Narseh, a Sasanian nobleman, 702, 707
- Narseh, of the Andigān clan, 705
- Narseh, ruler of Andigān, 708
- Narses, Byzantine general, 165
- Narshakhi, Muhammad, author of *Tārikh-i Bukhāra*, 363, 449, 1003
- nāṣārā*, Christian, 933
- Nāsatya, 412
- nāṣorāyā*, Marcionites, 930
- Nāṣir al-Dīn Tūsī, 933
- Nāṣir-i Khusrau
- on Lahsā, 1024
- Nāṣorāy*, of Mandeans, 907
- Nastür, 376 n. 2
- Nasu, demon of death, 348
- Nathan, Rabban, 917–18
- nātiq*, messenger prophet, 1016
- Naubakhti
- source for Mazdakism 1008–13
- Nau Bihār, Buddhist temple, 466
- Naudhar/Naotara, 345, 373, 402, 404, 415, 444, 452, 457
- as Manūchihr's successor, 435
- house of, 367, 413, 460–1
- nauha*, mourning songs, 449
- nā'ūra*, 563
- Nau Rūz/Navasard festival, *see* Nō Rōz
- Nauruz-nāma*, 707
- Navasard, New Year, 502
- navy
- Byzantine, 169
- Persian, 181

INDEX

- nāzir*, trustees, 664
Nazoreans, *see* Mandeans
‘ndym’ng’l’n sld’l, principal master of ceremonies, 710
 Neapolis, 759
 Nebo/Nabium (Mercury), 498
 Nebukadnesser, *see* Büktanatşar
 Negus, the title of the ruler of Ethiopia, 157
 Nehardea/Naarda, 69–70 n. 6, 71, 89, 759, 912
 centre of Jewish Exile, 70, 73
 destruction of, 914
 Nehemiah, 499
nēmrōz, Nēmrōz, the south, 445, 732
 Nēram, 430, 432–3
 Nergal, Assyrian deity, 77
 Nero 81, 83–5, 517
 Neryosang, Mazdean god, 1194
 Nešfarn, Sogdian envoy, 617
 Nestorianism, 272, 616, 853, 896, 1219, 1225
 sole allowed Christian sect in the Sasanian empire, 149
 disputes with monophysites, 171, 174, 942–4
 in China, 274–5, 554
 in Hīra, 488; the ‘*Ibād*, 598
 break from fellow-Christians, 499
 missions, 500, 931
 Byzantine associations, 573
 school at Nisbis, 573, 944
 Gundeshāpūr medical school, 573
 Theodore of Mopsuestia, 576
 official church of Persia, 584; toleration and repression, 584–6
 Mesene bishoprics, 594
 Turkish, 621
 Sasanian dioceses, 751–74 *passim*; hyparchies, 754, 757
 Bar Šaumā and theology, 942–5
 under the Sasanians, 945–7
 under Islam, 947–8
 Nestorius, 499, 554, 942–3
 Nēv-Ardāšir, 1185
 Nēv-Shāpūr/Abarshahr, 768
nbēyṛpt, chief huntsman, 711
 NHL MLKy, royal canal, 719, 724
 Nicaea, Council of, 143–4, 931, 940
 Nicanor, Syrian usurer of Dura-Europos, 717
 Nicea Nialia (Barza?), 762
 Nicene creed, 144
 Nicephorius, river, 46 n. 1
nigān-i Jam, 426
nibātak, money investments, 663
 Nihāvand, 120, 713, 734, 767, 1032
 battle, Arab–Sasanian conflict, 172, 486
 Seleucid polis, 713
Nihāyat al-irab, 363, 475, 1281, 1283
 Niké, 691, 847
 in the iconography of divine kingship, 1080–1
 Nile, as mythical Rājha, 352
 Nimrūd Dāgh, funeral hill of Antiochus I of Commagene, 112, 507, 535, 842, 866
 Nineveh, 77, 170, 498
 Ning Yüan, *see* Farghāna
 Nino
 “Life of Saint Nino”, 534
 Nippur, 490
 magical bowls at, 920
 Nirāqistān, *see* Avesta
 nirmat, fees, 904
Nirvāṇa-sūtra, Buddhist canonical text, 617
 Nisā/Mihrdādkert, original capital of the Parthians, 241, 280, 438, 769, 844, 846, 866–7, 1231
 ostraca, 22, 681, 685, 694, 696–7, 700, 703, 711, 726; and the historicity of Arsaces I, 30; leases, 659, 663; Arsacid genealogies, 687–9, 691; tax, 744–5; Parthian script, 1152 and n. 2; importance, 1263
 “Old” and “New”, 26
 official name Mihrdādkert, 39
 mint, 283, 287–8
 ceases to be a capital, 483
 Parthian family residence, 709
 excavation, 1037–41; ivory objects, 1041; finds, 1047; palestra? 1047–8
 nisang, administrative district, 732
 Nisāya, 438
 Nishāpūr, city in Khurāsān, 24, 136, 146, 705, 970
 Sunbād revolt, 1003
 frescoes, 1089
 Nisibis, 46, 73, 84, 88, 94, 137, 571, 753, 761–2, 858, 931–2
 captured by Romans, 91, 125
 captured by Sasanians, 124, 138
 Roman–Sasanian trading station, 131
 and Byzantine–Sasanian conflict, 155, 159, 164, 569
 a Roman capital, 484
 evacuated by Jovian, 485
 centre of Nestorianism, 573, 576–7, 583, 944
 joined to Adiabene, 728
 Jews and, 909, 918, 925 n. 5
nīṣyān, “neglect”, 1006 n. 5
 Nivika, 430
 Niya, 209, 265, 548
 Niżāmābād, bust from, 1090

INDEX

- Nizāmī Ganjavī, 527
 Nizām al-Mulk, 392, 408
Siyar al-Muluk (*Siyāsat-nāma*), 364, 994, 1279
 on Mazdakites, 996, 1001, 1005;
 Khurramis, 1010, 1014
 on Bātinis, 1015
 Noah's Ark and the Flood, 424 n. 1, 497
 Nōgšahrāfuryazd, "God of the Creation of
 the New World", 860
 Noin-ulā on the Tola river, 540
 Nokonzok
 Surkh Kotal inscription, 199, 248, 1250–1,
 1255–7
 his well, 1250 n. 1
 nomadic activity
 into Seleucid territory, 5
 threat to Bactria, 5–6
 Parni overrun Parthia, 6, 686
 westward migration, 36, 191–2, 211,
 241–2, 540
 threat to Parthia, 36, 38–9, 193, 542, 769
 Moschi, Roman allies, 81
 against the Sasanians; Chionites/Huns,
 137, 211–12; Hepthalites, 147, 163,
 214–16; Arabs, 150, 163; at Dhū Qār,
 167; Khazars, 163; in Harčv, 769
 Sasanian defence of the Caucasus passes,
 141
 Huns in the Middle East, 142
 Arabs and Byzantines, 157
 invasion of eastern Iran, 191–207
 conquest of Bactria, 192–3, 212, 243, 540
 conquest of southern Asia, 193–6; the
 Hūnas, 214
 Indo-Parthians against Sakas, 197
 Kushān empire established, 198
 in Transoxiana, 241–4
 Arab migration, 484
 invasion route from the north, 505
 Celts in Asia Minor, 509
 movement in central Asia, 540–1
 Chinese against Central Asian nomads,
 542–3, 546
 in the Tārim basin, 544–5
 in the Mongolian zone, 546
 of Arab tribes, 593–609 *passim*
 Turk and Uighur empires, 613–16
 against Caucasian kingdoms, 763–5;
 subsidies to Huns, 764
 into Hyrcania, 767–8
 religion and migration, 851–2
 Hepthalite sweep south, 957
 into Khwārazm, 1140
 see also named tribes
 non-Iran, 481, 731, 790, 880, 884
 Nō Rōz, Zoroastrian New Year festival,
 136, 371–2, 793, 797–800
 and the cult of Siyāvush, 450
 Babylonian origin, 502
 and the number seven, 789–90
 and calendar changes, 805–12 *passim*
 'n'r'nr'bry, non-Iran, 731
 Nūd-Ardashir, 723
 Nūhzādag, interpreter of Māni, 971
 Nu'mān I, Lakhmid founder of the kingdom
 of Hira, 487, 598–600
 Nu'mān III, Nestorian king of the Lakhmid
 Arabs, 166, 599
 capital at Hira, 166
 executed, 488
 and Medina, 601
 deposed by Khusrav Parviz, 607–8
 and "The Day of Dhū Qār", 608
 Numenius, satrap of Characene, 310
 numismatics, *see* coinage
 nūrā, fire, 937
 Nūrābād, tower in Fārs, 868–9
 Nura-tau, mountains, 258
 Nuwairi, author of *Nihāyat al-Arab*, 1023
 'nwrz̄npt'lpstn, official title, 738
 nyāyiñ, defined, 1170
 nywdptyl'dnyk, chief of protocol, 710
 nyw shpw̄r, city founded by Shāpūr I, 725
- Obadas Frataphernes, 487
 Oborzos, 302
 Oc Eo, 552, 756
 Octavian, *see* Augustus
 Octavius
 lieutenant of Crassus, 54; battle of
 Carrhae, 54
 escapes to mountains, 55
 death, 55
 Odatis, 389, 467–8, 1161
 Odenathus, ruler of Palmyra, 126, 312, 715
 öd tāngri, Turkish God of Time, 621
 Ohrmazd, *see* Ahurā Mazdā
 Ohrmazd, *see* Hormizd
 Ohrmazd-Ardashir, *see* Hormizd-Ardashir
 Ohrmizd-Pērōz, royal fire-temple of, 641,
 891
 Olenieire, Arsacid queen, 67
 O Lo Pén, Syrian Nestorian missionary, 554
 Omanos/Vohu Manah, 843
 Omartes, father of Odatis, 467–8
 Ommana (the later Harmouza/Hurmuz),
 756, 772
 omomi, *see* baoma
 Opis, site of the later Seleucia-on-the-Tigris,
 719
 Orabzes, 313

INDEX

- ordeal, 375, 448
 of Adhurbad, 140, 887, 996
 at the resurrection, 357
 judicial, 679
- Ordos region, 539–40
 Ordū Balıq, Uighur capital, 273
 Oreitae, tribe, 777
 Orissa/Kalinga, 950, 953
 Orkhon river, 272–3
 Ornospades, Parthian nobleman, 73
 Orodes I, Arsacid king, 42, 112, 285
 coinage, 44, 286
 restored to the throne by Surenas, 51
 conquers Seleucia, 51
 Parthian force in Armenia, 55
 breaks Roman–Armenian alliance, 56
 Pacorus, son of, 56; death, 58
 appoints Phraates IV as his heir, 58
 at Carrhae, 483
- Orodes II, 305, 308
 captures Seleucia from Mithradates III, 40
 coinage, 48, 289, 311
 brother and rival of Mithradates III, 48
 Surenas his general takes Seleucia, 49
 and Artavazd of Armenia, 517–18
- Orodes III, 68
 coinage, 293
- Oromasdes, 113, 535
- Orontes, river, 509
- Orontes I, satrap of Armenia, 506–7
 derivation of name, 507
- Orontes II, satrap and king of Armenia, 508
- Orontes IV, last Orontid king of Armenia, 512
- Orontids, Armenian dynasty, 506–12, 535
 list of kings, 507
- Orthaghes, Indo-Parthian ruler, 197
- Osaces
 raids Antioch with Pacorus, 56
 dies, 56
- Öşetar, mythical champion, 1194
- Ösetarmäh, mythical champion, 1194
- Oshakan, 522
- Öshnar/Aošnara, vizier to Kai Kāvūs, 374
- Ösmurdig(calculated) year, *see* time-reckoning
- Öšnar, *Andarz* of, 1181
- Osroene, the province of Edessa, 93, 130,
 491, 728, 841,
 annexed as a Roman province, 94
 and Christianity, 924–8 *passim*
- Osroes I/Khusrau, Arsacid king, brother or
 brother-in-law of Pacorus II
 coinage, 42 n. 3, 88, 93, 296, 309
 quarrels with Trajan, 87
 dynastic struggle with Vologeses II, 88
 escapes from Ctesiphon, 90
- army leaders quarrel, 91
 contends with Vologeses III, 93
- Osroes II
 coinage, 297
- Ossetes, tribe, 852
- östān, royal estates, 531, 640, 669, 732 and
 n. 6, 747
 östāndär, 658, 726; functions, 733–4
 östānik, 660
- Ostanes, Magian, 828
- östikān, 630 n. 1
- Ostrogoths, 154
- Otanés, 286
- Otabakht, son of the king of Mescne, 708
- Ottoman empire, 132
- Outii/Yutiya, tribe, 772
- Oxathres, Darius' son, 304–5
- Oxus/Guishui/Amū Daryā river, 15, 38–9,
 100, 156, 163, 232, 373, 409, 439, 450,
 541, 613, 847, 1130
- treasure, 29 and n. 2, 193, 1143
- Macedonian–Persian conflict, 182
- Bactrian Greek settlements, 188–9, 236
- Kushān migration, 199, 248
 settlements in Transoxiana, 243
 irrigation canals, 1135; disrepair, 1140
- Oxyartes, 183, 236
 becomes satrap of the Paropamisadae, 185
- Ozymandias, 113 n. 2
- Pachomios, 945
- Pacores, Indo-Parthian ruler, 197
- Pacorus I, Arsacid king, son of Orodes I, 85
 marries Artavasdes' sister, 56
 raids Antioch with Osaces, 56
 joins Labienus' army to invade Syria, 57
 advances on Jerusalem, 57
 against the Romans in Syria, 58
 death, 58
 coinage, 58, 291, 295
 as sub-king in Atropatene, 79
- Pacorus II, rival to Vologeses I, 86
 coinage, 86–8, 296
- Pacorus, king of Persis, 305
- padmān/paimān, moderation, 400, 423, 864
- pad mēnōgib, 354
- Paetus, Caesinius, Roman general in
 Armenia, 84
- Paikand, 258
- Paikuli, inscriptions of Narseh, son of
 Shāpur I, 129–30, 524 n. 1, 628, 682,
 693, 699, 706, 708, 884, 1272
 value for Armenian history, 519–20
- portrait busts, 1090
- Parthian language in, 1164–5
- purpose, 1209

INDEX

- pairikā/parik*, 349 and n. 7, 430, 536
Paitīṣab্যa, one of the *gāhāmbārs*, 795
pakhlavuni, see Balkh
 Pakistan, 127, 446, 508
 Palestine, 412, 912, 918, 986
 Persian troops occupy, 170, 174
 Arab migration into, 484
 Khirbet-Kerak pottery culture, 505
 Parthian conquest and withdrawal, 911
 silk industry, 912
 Palmyra, 498, 755, 844, 866
 expansion, 127
 Roman rule, 128; Roman bulwark, 139,
 484, 491
 caravan trade, 312, 739–41
 Tadmor, 484
 elimination of independence, 569
 Arab principality, 595
 Palmyrenes in Dura-Europos, 715–16
 tribal structure, 721
 inscriptions, 740
 tariff of customs duties, 741
 frontality in monuments, 1051
 Pāmirs, 541, 548
 Pan Ch’ao, Chinese general, 266
 against the Hsiung-nu, 543
Panchatantra, the, 161, 497, 1168, 1125
 Pandava, kings of India, 446
Pandānak i Zartuši, 1181
 Pānyāt-Ardashir, in Qatīf, 757
 Panjikent/Panch, 240, 251, 256, 960, 1228
 wall paintings, 450 and n. 2, 457, 613,
 1089, 1115, 1145–6
 enlarged, 1145
 script, 1219
 Pantaleon, Euthydemid king, 189
pāṇīrī/kaētas, 395
 Pap, king of Armenia, 138, 530
 Pāpā bar Aggai, bishop at Seleucia-Ctesiphon, 931, 936
 Pāpāk/Pāpag, father of Ardashir I, 116–18,
 460, 696, 702, 705, 708, 1208
 beginnings of the Sasanian dynasty, 117
 extent of the rule of, 118
 return to Parthian allegiance? 118
 in traditional history, 378, 477, 1187 and
 n. 1
 king-priest, 874
 Pāpāk the *hazārapāi*, 702
 paper, Chinese, 551 n. 2(c), 622
 papyri, Pahlavi, 1212–13
 parables, Manichaean, 1200, 1225
parab < *paras rab*, defined, 504
 Paraclete, Māni as, 984
 Paradene, in present Baluchistān, 130
paradhāta/pishdād, defined, 420
 Paraetacene, 752
 Pārdān, vassal kingdom of, 730, 776–7
 Pareshahvar, mountains, see Alburz
parik, see *pairikā*
 Parishkhwār, vassal kingdom, later province, 765–6
paristār, sacred slave, 641
 Parnabazid dynasty in Iberia, 520
 Parnavez, ruler of Iberia, 514–15
 Parni/Aparni, 4, 24, 30, 747, 767, 851
 and Arsacid dynasty origins, 27–9, 187,
 686, 689
 Paropamisadae, province of eastern Iran,
 186
 controlled by the Mauryas, 186
 eastern campaign of Antiochus III, 188
 Parrax, vassal of Meherdates, 78
 Pārs/Persis/Pārsa, 96, 140, 282, 299, 322,
 325, 363, 378, 391, 402, 484, 603, 605,
 714, 750–2, 772, 868–9, 969, 1074, 1161,
 1178, 1188, 1190, 1220
 Sasanian origins, 116–18
 Bishapū built, 121, 127
 and Christianity, 139, 929, 931–2, 943
 Egypt invades, 187
 and Antiochus III, 188, 310
 coin, 213
 chronological table of kings, 315
 Bāzrangī king of, 378
 independent, 701
 nobles at Sasanian court, 705
 semi-independent, 727
 loses independence, 729–30
 administrative structure, 732–4
 Magians of, 831–3
 fire-cult in, 868–9
 Sasanian art, 1055; rock-sculptures, 1078–
 86
 Parsees, 524, 790, 811, 876, 905–6
 Zoroastrian origins, 1169
 Pahlavi writings, 1169
 Parsietae (Pashtuns?), 771
 Parsii (Pashtuns?), 771
 Parśva, convener of the Third Buddhist
 Council, 204, 206
 Partev, dynasty of Armenian Patriarchs,
 518
 Parthamasiris, brother of Axidares, 87–8
 death at the hands of Trajan, 88
 Parthaspates, son of Osroes, 91, 92
 coinage, 91, 296
 governor of Osroene, 93
 Parthava/Parthia, 730, 750, 752–3, 968–9
 Achaemenian province, 26
 renamed Abarshahr, 767
 see also Parthian empire

INDEX

- Parthian empire, 28–97
 geography of the satrapy of Parthia, 24–7
 Parthia and Hyrcania a unit, 24
 Arsacid kingdom established, 28–31
 expansion under Mithradates I, 33–5
 nomad threat, 36, 38–9, 193, 542, 769;
 Arsacid rule in Sakastān, 41
 Seleucid Antiochus VII defeated, 37–8
 against the Tochari, 38
 administration in Babylonia, 39
 capitals, 39–40, 483
 suzerainty of Characene, 40
 and Armenia, 41; intervention, 46–7, 56,
 516
 Indo-Parthian allies, 41
 and Rome, 45, 46; an equal, 55
 Carrhae campaign, 48–58
 Euphrates frontier with Rome, 55; Tigris,
 90; Jabal Sinjār–Dura Europos, 94
 in Roman Syria and Judea, 56–8
 invasion of Mark Antony, 58–65
 peace with Augustus, 65–9
 Jews of Neardē'ā, 69–72; massacred in
 Seleucia, 72–3; relations, 75, 910–13,
 917–18
 conflict with Rome over Armenia, 73, 76,
 79–86, 87, 93, 94, 516–17
 treaty with Tiberius, 74
 Gotarzes defeats Meherdates, 78
 religion; the Avesta, 85; Māni, 97; Zoro-
 astrian festivals, 792–805; development
 of religious thought, 834–57; Zoro-
 astrian religion, 866–74; Christianity,
 924–8
 war against Trajan, 86–92
 and Marcus Aurelius, 93
 the “Great Pestilence”, 93–4
 invasion of Septimius Severus, 94
 and Caracalla, 95
 succumbs to the Sasanians, 96; fate of
 feudal families, 119–20
 language, 97, 691–2, 1151–65 *passim*
 and Antiochus III, 187
 legendary history, 388–91 *passim*, 473–6
 and Mesopotamia, 481, 483–4, 492, 500;
 polis in, 715–22
 feudal system, 528–31
 and China, 541–4, 552
 trade, 542, 551–2, 560, 571, 722, 738–41,
 756, 762, 768
 and the Arabs, 594–6
 social organisation, 631–46 *passim*
 law, 646–80 *passim*
 three areas, 714–15, 734–5
 administration divisions, 725–6
 a confederation, 727–9
 unity and disintegration, 735
 state officials, 735–6
 taxation, 744–5
 geography, 747–77 *passim*
 time-reckoning in, 778, 782, 785–6;
 Parthian calendar, table, 814–15
 sources for its history, 1261–9
 cultural relations with Rome, *see* Roman
 Empire
see also art, coinage, literature etc.
- Parthusagittarii*, 562
 Parthyene, 766
parvar, use defined, 725
 Pasa-Ardashir, 723
pasānik, 530
 Pasargadae, 116, 482, 483
 tower temples, 506
 palace of Cyrus, 1027
pasgrib, *see* *pitiaksh*
 Pashang, house of, 367, 440
pas̄iz, 333
 Pashkibur (Peshawar?), 127
 Pasitigris, river, 487
pati, *patmān*, written agreements, 670
pat abravāt, endowed foundation, 661
 Pātaliputra/Patna, 952
 Buddhist council of, 951
pat aparmān, legal use of, 656
pat arž, category of disposable property, 659
pat bahr bangāriš, defined, 667
pat bahr i xvēl|xvēših, “personal” portions
 of an inheritance, 668
*patbāžik|ptbz̄yk|*patibāži*, a land-tax, 744,
 1263
pat dāt, legal use of, 656
pat ēmōčān, military allotments of land, 660,
 700
pat ēt, penance, 1177
Pat ēt, Mazdean text, 897, 1177
 Pathanya, 430
 Patigrabana, 24
 Pātič, father of Māni, 965–6
 Patika, copper-plate of, 190, 195, 202
pativ, diadem, 707
patixātīy, “ruler”, 882
patixātīy
 in legal definition of master and slave
 relationship, 639
 as marriage, 646–9
 use in property law, 656
pātkōs|pāygōs, administrative division, 732
pat rāh|bač kust i nabānazdičih, agnatic pro-
 cedure for guardianship, 650
pat rāh i dō-kasih, defined, 668
pat ruvān endowed foundations, 661–4, 685,
 694

INDEX

- pat stūrih*, stūr-possession, 668
pat yāvētānīk, defined, 669
 Paul, the Persian, ecclesiastical scholar, 571
 Paul, St, 509, 966
 Paulicians, Manichaeon sect, 536 and n. 2
pāyandān, *ham-pāyandān*, warrantors, co-warrantors, 671
 Pāy-i Pūl, bridge, 753
 Pāzand, 1187
 Pazryk, in the Altai, 539, 548
 peach/*Amygdalus persica*, 551 n. 2, 565
 Peacock-angel/Malak Tā'ūs, 501
 "Pearl, The Song or Hymn of the", see poetry
 Pei-t'ing protectorate, 268
 Peloponnesian war, 102
 Peqīdā, bishop in Adiabene, 925–6
 Perāt dhe Maisān, refounded as *Vahman-Ardashir, 755, 932
 Perdiccas, 236
 perfume, 551, 739
 "The Periplus of the Erythraean Sea", 548, 756
 Pērōz, Sasanian king, son of Yazdgard II, 147, 379, 382, 401, 403, 603, 640, 915, 1019
 against Armenia, 148
 recovery of throne, 214
 Hephthalite campaigns, 214, 334
 coinage, 326, 330
 and religion, 891, 943
 weakening of the empire, 1118
 Pērōz/Firūz, son of Yazdgard III, 171, 547
 against the Arabs, 176
 in China, 176, 546, 988
 Pērōz, brother of Shāpūr I, 969
 Pērōz I Kūshānshāh, 209, 730
 Pērōz II Kūshānshāh, 209
 Pērōz, a BR BYT', 702, 707
 Pērōz, son of the king of Mesene, 708
 *Pērōz-Kavād, in Shirvān, 765
 Pērōz-Shāpūr/Anbār, see Massice
 *Pērōz-Shāpūr/Faishābūr, 761
 Persepolis, 104, 116, 472, 482–3, 682, 869, 1062, 1065
 cult statue of Anāhitā, 100
 the Apadana, 105
 inscription of Shāpūr Sagānshāh, 140, 1209
 mint, 299–300
 Achaemenian throne, 327
 Elamite tablets, 388, 440, 456
 E and H inscriptions, 506 n. 2; of Artaxerxes II or III, 506 n. 2
 palace of Darius, 1027
 Treasury, 1035, 1040
 Seleucid fire-temple, 1037
 Council Hall, 1081
 Persian Gulf, 593–4, 603, 608, 722, 756–7
 Persians, School of the, 584
 from Edessa to Nisibis, 573
 Persis, see Pārs
 pēšak, social estate, 633
 Pēšāna, 466
 Pescennius Niger, 297
 Peshawar, 189, 957
 treasure at, 193
 expansion of the Kushān empire, 198
 Sasanian rule of the Kushān empire, 203
 casket of Kanishka I, 209
 Peshitta, Syriac Bible, 1226
 Pēshyānsī, plain of, 430
 Pešōtan, legendary hero, 1194
 Peter the Patrician, Byzantine master of offices, 574
 Petra/Tsikhis-dziri, Byzantine fortress, 155, 312, 521
 besieged by Lazic-Byzantine force, 156
 "Peutinger Table", see *Tabula Peutingeriana*
 Pharasmenes, king of Iberia, 73, 81
 "Pharmacopoeia of foreign drugs", 553
 "Pharmacopoeia of the Western Barbarians", 553
 Pharmuthi, 119
 Pharnapates, Parthian officer, 58
 Pharnuchos of Antioch-Nisibis, 826
 phārrā-/perne/lakṣmi, 1242
 Phasael, the Idumaean, 57
 Phasis/Poti, 533
 phīalē, libation-bowl, 193
 Philadelphia, 102, 846
 Philip, officer of Alexander, 185
 governs Bactria and Sogdiana, 185
 Philip, son of Balakros, 236
 Philip the Arab
 made emperor, 125
 in the rock-reliefs of Shāpūr I, 322, 577, 1083 and n. 1, 1208
 and Armenia, 519
 Philip Epiphanes, 42
 Philippicus, brother-in-law of Maurice, 163
 Philippicus, Byzantine general, 168
 philosophy
 exiled Athenians, 161, 486
 Greek, in Iran, 508, 573, 583, 1180
 Stoics, 826
 of Platonic Schools, and Mithraism, 854–5
 Phoba, 313
 Phocas, Byzantine emperor, 167
 death, 168

INDEX

- Phraata/Praaspa, capital of Atropatene/
 Azarbājān
 besieged by Antony, 59–60
 identification of, 63–4
 Afrāh-rōdh/Marāgha? 64, 763
- Phraates/Frahāt I, Arsacid king, son of
 Priapatius, 686, 688, 766
 expands the Parthian kingdom, 31
 as Frahād, 1156 n. 6
- Phraates II, 635
 Saka people, 36, 38
 releases Demetrius I, 37
 victory over the Seleucids under Antio-
 chus VII, 38, 40
 death, 38
 coinage, 282–3
- Phraates III, son and successor to Sinatruces,
 45
 coinage, 45, 47–8 and n. 1, 289
 correspondence with Lucullus, 46
 remains neutral in Lucullus/Mithradates
 conflict, 46
 invades territory around Artaxata, 46
 establishes base at Arbela, 47
 overruns Gordyene, 47
 dislodged by Afranius, 47
 frontier dispute with Tigranes, 47
 and Tigranes the Younger, 516
 genealogy, 687–8
- Phraates IV, 58, 61, 305, 692, 705, 873
 secures his succession by murder and
 exile, 58
 Roman campaign against Parthians, 59–
 65, 292
 coinage, 60, 66, 291, 308
 Pax Romana, 66–8, 483
 and Thea Musa, 67–8
- Phraates V/Phraataces, 66, 292, 712
 birth, 67
 short reign, 68
- Phraates, son of Phraates IV
 hostage, 65–6
 in Rome, 67–8
- Phraates, satrap of Seleucia, 74, 720
- Phrataphernes, king of the Chorasmians,
 238
- Phrixus, oracle of, 533
- Phrygia, Phrygians, 482, 509, 533, 831, 838,
 910
- phylae, in Palmyra and Edessa, 721
- physicians, 161, 207, 571, 754
 Galen, 94
 of Khusrav II, 172, 946
 Gundēshāpūr medical school, 573
 Mānī, 971
- physikoi*, Magians as, 830
- pīdā-bara*, defined, 495
- Pilsam, son of Vēsa, 443
- pilus*, skull-cap, 525
- piracy, 752
- Pirān, cousin of Afrāsiyāb, 375, 443, 458,
 460, 461
- Pishdadians, legendary dynasty, 385, 388,
 391–2, 415, 420–36, 445, 789
 in Iranian beliefs about creation, 355
 as early kings in traditional history,
 366
- Pishdad, the founder, 371
 Sasanian treatment of, 402–3
- pīshīnīgān*, “men of yore”, 399
- Pishotan, son of Gushtāsp, 356, 467, 469
- Pisināj̄, lake, 429
- Pissuri, 27
- pistachio, 551 n. 2, 565
- Pitaona, 430
- pītaras*, 344
- pītiakbsh / bidakbsh / bitaxš*, governor, 515,
 703, 708, 735–6, 764, 1262
 in Syriac, *pāṣ grib*, 1268
- Pius, Antonius, 93
- plants
 myrtle, of Zoroastrians, 498
 Persian cultivated, 564–6
 good and evil, 830
 basil, in marriage, 1011
 see also *haoma*
- Plato, ruler of Bactria, house of Eucratides,
 189
- pīstkpt*, major domo, 710–11
- poetry, 65, 205
 Parthian minstrel, 23, 1155; Georgian and
 Armenian, 536; Median, 1161; Sasanian,
 1167
 Hīra rulers as patrons, 609–10
 “Song of the Pearl”, 839–40, 1161–2,
 1264, 1267
 verse forms, 1157 and n. 3, 1167;
 Manichaean, 1163–4, 1202–3
Vis u Rāmīn, 1158–9
 Manichaean, 1163, 1202–4
 Sasanian narrative, 1168
Zarātušt-nāma, 1174
Gōwīn ig Grīw Zindag, 1203
Gōwīn ig Grīw Rōšn, 1203
 Khotanese, 1237–9
 epic poetry, see literature
 see also *gōsān*
- polis*, in the Iranian empire, 106, 112
 Seleucid, 8–9, 12, 17, 713–14, 821–3; in
 Mesopotamia, 714, 716–22 *passim*
 Parthian, in Mesopotamia, 715–22
- politeuma*, polis-type city, 714, 822

INDEX

- Pollio, Roman commander of Mithradates III, 79
- poll-tax, *see taxation: jizya, karga*
- Po-mo, 246
- Pompeipolis/Soli, 69
- Pompey, 81, 110, 289
and Armenia, 46–7
pursuit of Mithradates of Pontus, 47;
defeat, 114
and Syria, 47, 483
Roman civil war, 56
in Armenia, Iberia and Colchis, 516
- Pontic Alps, 513
- Pontus, 728, 831
centre for worship of Persian gods, 102
emergence of the monarchy, 106, 114
temples, 107–9; the Persian gods, 111
village organization, 110
- Iranisation–Hellenisation, 111
- organisation of the state, 111
- relationship with Rome, 114
- cultural unity with Armenia and Parthia, 114
- largely absorbed into Lazica, 521
art still unknown, 1049
- populorum ordo*, 1268
- Porphyrius of Gaza, 987
- Porphyry, 583
- pōryōtēsān*, ancient sages, 1178, 1181
- Po-ssū, Chinese name for Sasanian kings and empire, 542
- post, state system, 564, 574
courier service, 75 n. 6
- Poti/Phasis, 533
- p'pk'y*, rank of the nobility, 703
- Praaspa (later Afrāza/Marāgha), *see Phraata*
- Prajñā-pāramitā doctrine, 1236
- Pratitae tribesmen, 767
- preta*, hungry ghost, 619
- Priapatius/Friapatak, Arsacid king
son of Artabanus I 29
and early Parthian genealogy, 30–1, 686–8
- primogeniture, 669 and n. 1
- Priscus, Statius, Roman general, 93
- prmt'r*, 711
- property law, 631, 652, 655–69, 892, 904
and slavery, 636–7
and the family, 641–2
and agnatic groups, 643
wife's rights, 647–50, 666
conveyance, 656–8
varieties of real rights, 658–65; hereditary possession of family property, 658–9;
private property, 659; lease, 659–60;
deposit with right of usufruct, 660;
- conditional holdings, 660–1; private endowments, 661–5
- family possessions and the law of inheritance, 665–9
- prophecy, 832–3
- proskynesis, 824
- prostitution
- temple, in Pontus and Cappadocia, 107–9
in the Anāhitā cult? 873–4
- prostration, 710, 824
- Proto-Indoaryans, 347
- Prunus armeniaca*, 565
- prw'ry/prybr*, defined, 725
- Pseudo-Hippocrates, 1193
- Pseudo-Joshua, 995–6
- ps'nyk*, Sasanian municipal bodyguard, 724
- 'psyk*, a religious tax, 694, 904
'psykwmnd, collector of the tax, 904
- psyr genbr*, treasurer, 745
- p'tb'y*, title, 706
- Ptolemais/Acre, 57
- Ptolemy I, general of Alexander the Great and king of Egypt, 509
- Ptolemy II Philadelphus, 824
- Ptolemy III Euergetes, brother-in-law of Antiochus II
intervention in Seleucid dynastic war, 5
subjugation of Seleucid territory, 187
- Ptolemy IV Philometor, 36
supports Alexander Balas then Demetrius, 34
- Ptolemy XI Auletes
exiled, 49
- psyk*, religious tax, 904
and emphyteutic leases, 659, 663
- ptykwpn*, rulers of border regions, 696, 730
- Publius, son of Crassus, 54
battle of Carrhae, 53–4
death, 54
- P'u-ku Tsün, 268
- Pūlād-i Ghāndī/Nōla and Ghāndī, demons, 446
- Puli Murd bridge, 751
- Pulumāvi, Sātavāhana ruler, 208
- Pumbeditha/Pum-baditha, Jewish settlement in Parthian period, 71 and n. 1, 896, 919–20
- Punjab, 82, 949
Greeks against Sakas, 197
Indo-Parthians against Sakas, 197
taken by Demetrius I of Bactria, 952
- Punyayāsas Pūrnāśa, disciple of Parśva, 206
- Pūrdhaxšti, Aśavazdah's father, 413
- Purim, festival of, 835
- pursiṣ-nāmāk*, judicial record, 677
- Purushapura, 849

INDEX

- Purvaditya, Hūṇa king, 214
pus ičakar, son of the čakar widow, 653
 Pūshang, 769
 Pushkalāvati/Charsada, 189–90
 mint, 191
pus-i vāspuhr, heir to the throne, 702
 pūst, skin, 494
pustā-, book, 494
 Puṣyamitra, founder of the Sunga dynasty, 952
putrikā, Ancient Indian marriage, 649
putrikāputra, 653
putti, 209, 1142 (pl. 133)
 Pyramus/Ceyhan river, 69
- Qābūs, Lakhmid king, 488 n. 1, 607
Qābūs-nāma, by Kai Kāvūs b. Iskandar, 364
 qadar and kūni, in Bātīnī myth, 1016
 Qadimīs, 906
 Qadishayē (Kurds?), 761
 Qādisiyya, battle, 174, 486
 Arab–Persian conflict, 172
 Qaghan, title of Kök-Türk and Uighur rulers, 616
 Qais island, Nestorian diocese, 752
 Qais b. Mas‘ūd, chief of the Banū Shaibān, 601
 Qais b. Salama, chief of Kinda and Ma‘add, 602
qalam, reed pen, 622
qamis, Parthian shirt, 91
qanāt, 13, 604, 1189
 Qandahār, *see* Alexandria-amongst-the-Arachosians
al-Qānūn al-Mas‘ūdī, *see* Birūnī
 Qarabalgasun, inscription, 1229
 Qarakhānids, 269, 963
 Karashahr/Karashahr, 36, 200, 270, 543, 546, 548, 961, 1202
 Qārin, *see* Kārēn
 Qarmaṭī, Mazdakites, 1004, 1006, 1015 and n. 3, 1022
 village colonies, 1003, 1023
 Bātīnīs/Qarmaṭīs, 1023
 Qaṣr-i Abū Naṣr, 751
 archaeological finds, 732–3, 1097; bullae, 1098; bronze vessel, 1115
 Qaṣr al-Ḥair al-Gharbī, Umayyad palace complex, 597
 Qaṣr al-Ḥair al-Sharqī, Umayyad palace complex, 597
 Qaṣr-i Shīrīn, ‘Imārat-i Khusrav, palace of Khusrav II, 171, 1067–9 and fig. 6
qatoligā dəmadnbā, Catholicos of the Orient, 941
 Qaṭūṣif, *see* Ctesiphon
- Qinnasrīn, Lakhmid defeat at, 607
 Qiqān/Ki-kiang-na, tribe, 775, 776
qiyas al-anbiya', defined, 391
 Qizil, in the Kuchā region, 961
 Qizil Şū, 257
 Qočo/Qarā-qōjō/Kao-ch'ang/Ho-chou/
 Turfan, 271–2, 613, 618, 961–2
 T'ang conquest, 272
 Quietus, Lucius, Roman general, 91
 Qum/Thermantica, 767
 “Qum, History of”, 475, 999
 Qumis, 26 n. 3, 39 n. 4
 Qumrān, 1174
 Qumtura, 961
 Qunduz, 189, 193
 coin hoard of, 189, 246
Qunyat al-munya, 1248
 Quraiza, Jewish tribe of, 601
 Qur'ān, the, 609–11
 Qurna site, 40
 Qusair 'Amra, bath of, 612
 Qutaiba b. Muslim, 259, 1217, 1228, 1245
quwā, Powers, 1006
- Rabba b. Ḥana, 918
 Rabi'a, north Arab tribe, 598
rad, *see rat*
radāčīstar-warrior estate, 632–3
 Rāfidīs, 1001
 Raghā, of the Avesta, 438 n. 2
 Rabz'in, “hostages”, 599
 rabik, slave, 635
raj'a, return, 1001
 Rājagrha, Buddhist council of, 949–51
 Rajula, satrap of Mathurā, 195
 coinage, 195
 Rakhs, Rustam's horse, *see* horses
 ram, third estate, 632, 1268
 ramikān/ramikan, 1268
 Rāma, the story of, Khotanese poem, 1237–8
 Rām-Ardashīr, 723
 Rāmhurmuz/Rām-Ohrmazd-Ardashīr, 753
 ramikk, Armenian working class, 529, 1268
 rāmishgār, Entertainment Master, 1005–7
 and n. 1 *passim*
 Rañha/Arang, mythical river
 identified with many rivers, 352
 Rapithwin, spirit of noon, 798, 800
 Rašdāma, Rašdākma, 456
 Rashn, Sasanian deputy at Dura-Europos, 724
 Rashn Yasht, *see* Yashts
 Rašn, Mazdean god, 1194
 Rastak, shahrb of Seleucia, 724
 *rastutaxma-, 456

INDEX

- rat/rad/magus*, spiritual master, 630, 676, 679, 733
 functions, 734, 743
 Raushanak, 378
 Rav, 912, 918–19
 Rāvandīyya, Shī‘i faction, 1002 n. 3
 Ravigupta, author of the *Siddhasāra*
 Khotanese translation, 1233
 Rav Judah, 914
 Rav Judah b. Yehezqel, 919
 Ray/Rhagae/Rhages, 110, 410, 438 and n. 4,
 498, 725, 731, 1023
 mint-activity, 43, 49, 283, 287
 Mihrān family of, 163
 capital of Bistān, 166
 formerly Europus, Arsacia, 767, 823
 Sunbād revolt, 1003
 finds from the necropolis, 1111
 RB’ *bndryčpt*, official title, 738
 RB’*n*, see *wclk’n*
 RB’ *plmt'l*, late Sasanian first minister of
 state, 737
 rb *ÿrtb*, synodarch, 740
 regent, *bytb' as*, 737
 religion, 817–1024
 Iranian common beliefs, 343–58
 mourning rites, 449–51
 vegetation rites, 450–1
 Iranian influence on the west, 566–7;
 Magians, 826–31; Mythraic mysteries,
 853–6
 fatalism in near eastern, 609
 ancestor cult, 617, 641, 651, 694; divine
 ancestor, 696
 and citizenship, 634
 and slavery, 636–7
 development of religious thought in
 Iran, 819–65
 see also named religions, gods, etc.
 Resaina, 125, 168
 r \ddot{e} t *gälüžä*/exiliarch, see exiliarch
 Rev, King of Iberia, 520
 Rēv-Ardashir/Rishahr, 723, 752, 930, 932,
 947
 Rhabdium, 761
 Rhadamistus, son of Pharasmenes, 79
 Rhagae/Rhages, see Ray
 Rhandeia, valley of Murād Şü, 84
 Rhea, goddess, 533
 rbeon/rba/rēvās, 565
 Rhodaspes, son of Phraates IV, 67
 Rhodogune, wife of Orontes I, daughter of
 Artaxerxes II, 506
 rhubarb plant
 mythical, 370, 384, 416, 420
 medicine, 565
 riddles, 400–1, 407, 1160, 1179
 Right, General of the, 547 n. 1
 Rig-Veda, 343, 365, 412, 444, 789
 Rind, 725
 rivāyat, 431
 Rivāyat, Pahlavī, 417, 899, 905–6, 1178, 1181,
 1194
 accompanying the *Dātistān i dēnik*, 1186–7
 Rivāyat, Persian, 631, 905–6
 Rivāyat i Emēt i Ašavābištān, 630, 1186
 Rivāyat of Kāmdin Shāpūr, 905
 Rizāmiyya, Shī‘i faction, 1002 n. 3
 rmnyš *gnbr*, treasurer, 745
 roads, routes
 Roman (Pontus and Cappadocia), 114
 Royal road, 726, 738
 Euphrates road, 739, 758
 the “perfume road”, 739
 in the Sasanian state, 747–77 *passim*
 see also silk, trade
 Rōdāba/Rōdhāvadh, mother of Rustam,
 374, 453–4, 464
 Röddukht, daughter of Anūšak, 702
 rōdastāk, see rōstāk
 Rō'in Dēz, 469, 471
 Roman captives in Iran, 126, 131, 136, 581,
 751–4 *passim*, 758–60, 929, 1062, 1083,
 1089
 Roman Empire, 3, 6, 10, 21, 34, 81, 400,
 510, 721, 728, 745, 886
 battle of Magnesia, 29, 512–13; Peace of
 Apamea, 513
 Pontus occupied, 44–7; significance, 114
 impinges on Parthia, 45; warfare, 45–97
 passim
 Armenia invaded by Lucullus, 45–6, 516;
 Pompey, 47, 516
 Carrhae campaign, 48–58
 Euphrates boundary with Parthia, 55;
 Tigris, 90; Jabal Sinjär-Dura Europos,
 94
 Parthian incursions into Syria and Judea,
 56–8
 Augustan peace with Parthia, 65–9
 continuation of conflict with Parthia over
 Armenia, 79–86
 the “Great Pestilence”, 93–4
 eastern Asia Minor annexed, 114
 conflict with the early Sasanians, 124–32,
 518–19
 Diocletian fortifications, 137–8
 against Shāpūr II, 137–8; division of
 Armenia, 138
 invasion of Chionites/Huns, 137, 142
 Upper Mesopotamian boundary, 139
 Diocletian tax reforms, 153, 587, 746

INDEX

- Roman Empire (*cont.*)
 interest in Ethiopia and Arabia, 156
 trade with China, 198, 211, 550–1 and n.
 2(a), 756; with India, 198, 756–7;
 through Characene, 312; with Parthia,
 560; rivalry, 756; route surveys, 312–13
 Trajan and Characene, 313
 in Iranian traditional history, 409–10, 477
 and Mesopotamia, 483–5
 protector of Christians, 499
 and Armenia, 513–19 *passim*
 and Georgia, 520
 mission of Kan Ying, 543–4
 cultural relations with Parthia, 559–67; as
 equal powers, 559–60; in the military
 sphere, 561–3; plants, 564–5; religion,
 564–6
see also army
 “Roman–Syrian Law Code”, 588
 Rōshanak, daughter of Dārā I, 473
 Rōshnān, in the Pāmirs, 1231
 rōstāk, *rōstastāk*, rural district, 676, 727,
 1268
 “Royal Canon”, the, 781
 Rōzān Fravardigān, festival, 806
rta/arta/aśa, 343, 412, 418
 ‘rtdwks, of the Iranian Christian Church, 947
 ‘rbhīr prry, city founded by Ardashir I, 725
 ‘rbhīr śnwmy, city founded by Ardashir I,
 725
ruah, in gnostic thought, 836
 Rūdaki, Sāmānid poet, 1167
 Rüdbär of Qazvīn, 1005
 Rūm, 377, 403, 410 n. 5, 432, 467–8, 582
 Byzantium, 3
 Rūmis, people of Alexander, 410
 identified with the race of Salm, 428–9
 Greece, 472
 and Afqūr Shāh, 475
see also Asia Minor
 Rūmagān/Rūmiyya/Veh Antioch Khusrau,
 155, 758
 Rustam, legendary hero, 348–9, 373–7, 396–
 403 *passim*, 429–64 *passim*, 611, 1158
 origin of his legend, 51, 195, 346, 433,
 454–7, 470, 1157
 and the Simurgh, 346, 374, 453
 and Isfandiyār, 346, 376–7, 397, 467, 469
 and the White Demon, 349, 374
 his discovery of Kai Kavād, 351, 453
 and Surāb, 374
 “Seven Stations”/*Haft Khwān*, 374, 428,
 457
 and Siyāvush, 407
 house of, 453–7
 birth and youth, 453
 versions of name 454–6
 Sogdian fragment on, 456, 1146, 1157
 ‘abd from Kai Khusrau, 460
 in a Panjikent wall painting, 1146
 in Moses of Khoren, 1157 n. 2
 in the *Khwadāy-nāmag*, 1157
 Rōtastahm, *sagzi*, 1231–2
see also horses (Rakhsh),
 Rustam, commander of the army of
 Yazdgard III, 172
 Rustāq, 604
ruvān, soul of the dead, 796
ruvānakān dipir, Sasanian official, 664–5
śa, 1232
 Saba’, 602–3, 605
 Sābaj (Malays?), in Mēshan, 755
 Sabians, *see* Mandaeans
 Sabirghān, 459
 Sabrišō, synod of, 946
 Sābūr al-Junūd, *see* Shāpūr I
 Sacani/Sacasani, Scythian Iranians, 764
 Sacaraucae, *see* Sakas
 Sace, 767
 Sacidharman, King, 1185
 sacrifice, 76, 413, 417, 424, 1195
 Scythian horse-sacrifice, 195
 pagan, 343
 Zoroastrian/Mazdaean, 347, 534, 890; in
 Asia Minor, 872; at festivals, 795, 802;
 yasna, 904; in Pahlavī writings, 1178–9
 of Gāv, the Bull, 353, 418, 856 n. 2
 and Gayōmard, 418
 Mithraic, 418, 853–4, 856 and n. 2, 1011
 n. 2
 blood-sacrifice, 423, 827
 to Siyāvush, 449
 of a vegetation deity, 451
 human, 488
 Yazidi, 501
 of Magians, 827, 830–1, 833
 in the cult of Ahriman, 898
 Khurramī ritual slaughter, 1010–11
 Sada, festival, 793, 800–1
 commemorates Hōshang’s discovery of
 fire, 371, 801
 and calendar changes, 805–7
 Sa’d b. Abi Waqqāṣ, 947
 Sad-Dar, 1186–7
 Sadd-i Iskandar, fortification, 214
 Sadīr, palace of, 598
 Saēna bird/Saēna mārəgha/Sēn-murv /
 Sēmurgh, *see* Simurgh
 Saēna tree, 352
 Sagānshāh, 774–5
 Sagartii, 766

INDEX

- Sagdodonakos, 311, 487, 594
 Sahak, patriarch of the Armenian clergy, 145
 Sahak Bagratuni, king of the Christian Armenians, 148
sāhān sāh bandak, “subject of the king of kings”, 635 n. 3
sāhdā, martyr, 937
sāhib al-zanādiqa Islamic Chief Inquisitor, 989
sābr, province, 676, 701
 Šahr-Zapalakān, Sasanian noble family, 630
 Sa'īd ibn Batriq/Eutychius, Patriarch of Alexandria, 361, 1280
 Sa'īd al-Harashī, governor of Khurāsān, 260
 Saif b. Abī Murra, 158
 Saif b. Dhi Yazan, leader of Yemeni revolt, 606–7
 Sāinu, 409
 Sairima, the race of Sarm/Salm, 409, 428
 Sai-wang, Saka tribe, 192, 540
 Sakartvelo, land of the Georgians, 514
 Sakas, Sakae, Iranian nomads of central Asia, 542, 769, 773–4, 851–2, 1029, 1134
 Saka people, 36, 38, 43
 language, 36, 200, 266, 614
 Sararaeae group, 36, 44, 192–3, 767, 769;
 control of Punjab, 193
 under Mithradates II, 41
 legends of Zal and Rustam, 51, 346, 446,
 455–6, 1157
 at the battle of Carrhae, 53
 and the Sasanians, 128, 181
 Amyrgian or Saka Haumavarga, 181
 empire, 181, 197, 614
 cavalry, 182–3
 against the Macedonians, 183
 with Alexander, 183
 destruction of Marv, 186
 the “Old Saka” era, 190
 Sai-wang attacked by Yüeh-chih, 192
 conquest of Bactria, 192–4
 conquest of Southern Asia, 194
 coinage, 194; Indo-Saka coins, 242
 funeral rites, 195
 against Indo-Greeks, 195–6
 control of Taxila, 196
 against Indo-Parthians, 197
 armour and weapons, 199
 in Transoxiana, 232, 242
 Khotanese manuscript, 269–70
 Khotan kingdom of, 614, 849–50; as
 Buddhists in, 962
 language and religion, 614–15, 902, 953
 sēk/Sai, 614
 destroy Ai Khānum, 1034
 names for the land of, 1230–1
- Khotanese Saka writings, 1230–43
 ancestors of the Kushān rulers? 1251
see also Sīstān
 Sakastān, *see* Sīstān
 Sakastān, Tūrestān and Hind up to the sea,
 shahr of, 701, 729–30
Sakisarān, 469
 Salamis, 181
 Salang river, 182
sālār/sārdār, director of the Manichean church, 986
 Sālim b. Jabala, 469
 Saliya/Savala Chay river, 64
 Salm/Sarm, son of Frēdōn, 372, 373, 428,
 435, 457
 race of, 428–9
 Salmān al-Fārisī, Persian convert in Mecca,
 611
 Salmās, rock-sculpture, 1078
 Sām, legendary warrior, 367, 402
 father of Zāl, 373
 Karshāsp/Sām, 430, 432–3
 his mace, 453
 Sāma, house of, 429, 433
śaman, Buddhist, 907
 Samangān, king of, 453
 Sam'āni, 1015
 Samara, tribal leader of the Iberians of Mtskheta, 514
 Samaria, 498
 slaves from, 760
 Samarkand/Maracanda, 182, 235, 240, 244,
 546, 615, 738, 861, 960, 1147, 1256
 trade centre, 175; on the Silk Road, 548,
 615
 language, 176
 Samarkandian Sughd, 246, 250, 259;
 coinage, 256
 Sogdian homeland, 270
 wall-painting, 613
 Manichees in, 988
 and Kang-chü, 1136
 Bactrian influence, 1141
 under the Hepthalites, 1144
 destroyed by Alexander, 1216
 Śamaś, sun god, 484, 870
 Sampula, 269
 Samtskhe, Georgian province, 533
 Samuel, Jewish master under Shāpūr I, 879–
 80, 914, 919
 Ṣan‘ā’, capital of southern Arabia, 158
 Sanab (Heraeus or Miaios), 249
śanā'i, “creatures”, 599
 Sanatrūces, son of Meherdotes, 91
 Sanatrūk/Sanatrūces, *see* Sinatrūces
 Sanatrūk II, ruler of Hatra, 596

INDEX

- Sanaṭrūq/Sātirūn, ruler of Hatra, 491 and n. 3
 Sangharakṣa, spiritual guide of Kanishka I, 207
Buddhacarita, Yogācārabhūmi, 207
 Sāṅgīm, 272
 Sanjhayak, wife of Dahāk, 416, 427
 Sanja, 446
 Šaoreoro, god, 903
 Saošyant, *see* Sōšyant
 Sapadbizes, 235
 Sapīd-jāmagān, Mazdakites, 1004
sapinda, agnatic circle, 644
 Sarā, canal near the Tigris, 602
 Sarakhs, bullae found at, 734
 Sarangians/Drangians, from lower Hellmand, 439
 army under Pherendates, 181
 Sarapis, 849
sardār, dūtak-sardār, guardian, 651, 1189
 Sardis, 100, 105
 Persian conquest, 481
 Sargon, 498
 Sāri, Sāriya, 160, 766, pl. 101 a, b
 Sar-i Pul, rock relief, 735, 1078 and n. 4,
 1082, 1153 and n. 8
 Sarm/Salm, son of Frēdōn, 409
 Sar Mashhad
 inscription at, 683, 883
 rock-relief of Bahrām II, 1084–5, 1117,
 1118 and n. 1
 inscription of Kartir, 1210–11
 Sarmatians, 137, 525
 Sarvāstivādins, Buddhist sect, 614, 849, 953,
 957, 963
 Sarvistān, palace, 1065–7
 Sāsān, ancestor of Ardashir Pāpagān, 116–
 17, 377, 460, 473, 708
 house of, 164, 171, 305, 314, 378
 legendary genealogy of, 697–8
 Ardashir's father? 1187 and n.
 Sāsān, Indo-Parthian ruler, 197
 Sāsān, ancestor of the Andīgān clan, 705
 Sāsān, of the Andīgān clan, 705
 Sasanian dynasty, 116–80
 origins, 116–17, 1187 and n. 1
 the founder, Sāsān, 116, 133
 overthrows the Parthians, 118
 chronology of the early kings, 118–19
 and Parthian feudal families, 119–20
 dynastic sub-rulers, 120, 124, 126, 128–9,
 134, 143, 144, 145, 729–30
 the court, 120–1; of Khusrau I, 161;
 Khusrau II, 171
 coronations, 121, 134; coronation fire,
 695
 subject rulers, 121, 126–7, 130, 141–2,
 158, 167, 172, 729–31
 Arsacid Armenian king an enemy, 125
 wives, mothers, 127, 162, 166
 the usurper Vahunam, 129; Bahrām
 Chōbīn; 163–5; Bistām, 166; Shahrbārāz, 171
 crowns, 134; table, 135
 identified with the Zoroastrian church,
 140
 guardian for Byzantine heir, 144
 Hephthalites help enthrone Pērōz, 147
 214; Kavād, 149–50
 election of Balāsh, 149
 first woman ruler, 171
 succumbs to the Arabs, 172
 requests Chinese aid, 172, 176, 547; refuge
 in China, 176, 547
 revolts against Islam, 177
 chronological table, 178
 the Kūshānshāhs, 209–10, 212, 730
 in traditional history, 378–83, 392, 399,
 403–8, 438, 470, 476–7
 reliefs and inscriptions, 1077–89, 1207–9;
 see also named sites
 see also kingship
 Sasanian empire
 political history, 116–80; beginnings,
 116–24; conflict with Rome, 124–32;
 culmination of power, 132–43; from
 Yazdgard I to Khusrau I, 143–52; re-
 forms of Khusrau I, 153–4; revitaliza-
 tion, 153–70; Bahrām Chōbīn, 163–5;
 decline, 170–2; Arab victory, 172–6;
 nature of the conflict with Rome and
 Byzantium, 173–4; relations with
 China, 175–6; hope for restoration,
 176–7
 in eastern Iran, 203–17 *passim*
 and the Kūshāns, 203, 209–10, 212, 247,
 257
 and Transoxiana, 232, 257–8, 1140, 1143,
 1245
 common beliefs, 343–58
 and traditional history, 359–78 *passim*;
 mirror of Sasanian conditions, 402–11
 in Islamic and Pahlavī sources, 476–7
 and Mesopotamia, 481, 484–6, 499–500
 and Armenia and Georgia, 518–36 *passim*
 feudalism, 529
 and China, 542, 547–58 *passim*
 and the Arabs, 594–612
 relations with the Turks, 613–24
 society and law, 627–80 *passim*
 institutions, 681–746 *passim*
 geography and economy, 747–77

INDEX

- Sasanian empire (*cont.*)
 religion; development of thought, 858–65; Zoroastrian religion, 874–908; Jews and Judaism, 913–17, 919–23; Christianity spreads, 928–33; Christian Church, 933–48; Buddhism in Afghanistan, 956–7; Manichaeism, 965–88; Mazdakism, 991–1001, 1018–22 literature, 1166–9; reflected in Zoroastrian Pahlavī writings, 1170–95; Manichaean, 1196–1204 *passim* inscriptions, 1205–15, 1271–2, *see also* named sites sources for its history, 1269–82 contacts with Byzantium, *see* Byzantine empire *see also* art, coinage, law, etc.
- Sasanian Law-Book, *see* *Mātakdān i bazar dātastān*
śaś dāng xāna, defined, 504
- Sassoun, 514, 534
- Satala, 88, 534
- Satan, 501, 1017 and n. 2
- Śatapañcāstaka*, 207
- Śatavāhana, kingdom of the Deccan, 208
- Śaṛṇavar, patron of metals, 903
- Śāṭirūn, *see* Sanatrūq
- satrapies, satraps, 495, 515, 706, 708, 730, 744, 1263
 defined, 8
 Achaemenian insignia of, 686
 satrap of satraps, 691
- Seleucid, 725–6
 Parthian, 725–6
- Sauvra/Śarva, 348
- Śāva, 216
- Saviour/Redeemer
 Zoroastrian, 355–8, 364, 368, 386–7 and n. 1; *see also* Sōṣyant
 Iranian and Jewish, 835–6
 concepts of salvation, 836–40, 887
 Mithra as, 856
 in Manichaeism, 980–2
 Aryāmān, 984
- Savul, *daēva*, 898
- Sawād of Iraq, 599, 601, 608, 733
- saxvan-nāmak*, record of court proceedings, 677
- Śāyast ne-śāyast*, 1176–7, 1182
- Sāyuzdri, father of Aśavazdah and Thrita, 413
- 'sb'r, horseman, 700
- schoenae*, parasangs, 70
- science, 576–7, 583, 830, 881
 Babylonian, 501
 Greek in Iran, 508
- Iranian mathematics, 554
 scribes, 13, 16, 148, 1152, 1165
 scribal class, 394
 third estate, 633
 palace office, 711–12
 Parthian, 1154, 1164
 use of “vehicle” languages, 1251–5
 scribal schools, 1253–4 and n. 1
see also *dabirān*
 scripts, alphabets
 Aramaic, 16, 494, 514; cursive, 622; development of regional forms, 1151, 1251–4
 Greek, 16; in Bactrian, 146, 199, 201, 1254–8; monumental and cursive, 1257
 Parthian, 86, 494; from Aramaic, 1151; written evidence of, 1152–4; fate of, 1165
 Avestan, 162, 494–5, 1187
 Kharoṣṭhi, 201, 265, 494, 950, 958–9; an allied script, 201
 Sogdian, 270, 621–2; from Aramaic, 1151; cursive, 1146; three types, 1218; 1254 and n. 3, 1257–8
 Manichaean, 270, 622, 972, 1162, 1197; in Sogdian, 1198, 1218, 1258; in Bactrian, 1258
 Syriac, 270; developed by Mānī, 972; Estrangelo, 1218; used by Sogdian Christians, 1258; used by Persian Christians, 1258 n. 1
 Book Pahlavī; on coins, 330; ideograms in, 1214 and n. 4
 cuneiform, 365, 381, 390, 412, 493–4, 495, 782
 Elamite, 388, 390, 493, 784
 Sumerian, 493, 495
 Sumerian–Akkadian, 493
 Old Persian (Achaemenian), 493
 Pahlavī, 494–6; on coins, 330; from Aramaic, 1151–2; change of script, 1166; in Zoroastrian writings, 1169; Pāzand, 1187
 Phoenician, 494
 Indian Brāhmī, 494, 950; used by Sakas, 614; in Turkish manuscripts, 614–15
 Armenian, 514, 518, 522; and Mar'aba, 573
 Armazi, 515
 Arabic; newly-evolved, 598; in Persian, 1255
 Hephthalite, from Kushān, 614, 1256
 “Runic”, 615, 622, 1228
 “Uighur”, 622
 “Farghāna”, 1131
 Khwārazmian, from Aramaic, 1151, 1245

INDEX

- scripts, alphabets (*cont.*)
 of Median Āzārbājān, from Aramaic, 1151
 Middle Persian, types, 1206–7, 1211–12
 Arabo-Persian, for Khwārazmian, 1246
- sculpture, 113, 493, 844, 1048–9, 1072
 Seleucid Greek, 15
 in Achaemenian Asia Minor, 103–4
 Gandharan, 206, 955
 in the Deccan, 208
 Chinese Buddhist, 556, 954
 Parthian, 735, 1041–6 *passim*; Sasanian, 1077–98; for rock-reliefs, *see also* named sites
 Indian Buddhist, 952; rock architecture, 953
 Buddhist rock-architecture at Bāmiyān, 954
 Macedonian figurative, 1035–6
 Khwarazmian terra-cotta, 1138–9
 Bactrian, 1143, 1145
- Scylax of Caryanda, 593
- Scythians, 27, 65, 422, 525–6, 763, 829, 852
 Greek use of the term, 146
 tribes, 192
 art, 193
 burials, 195
 culture, 538–9
 overlords in central Asia and north-west India, 614
 the Sacani, 764–5
see also Indo-Scythians, Sakas
- 'sd (?Azd), Arab tribe, 603
- seals, 419 n. 3, 443, 498, 630, 719, 1213–14, 1270
 on legal documents, 670 and n. 1
 inscriptions on, 732–3
 Hephthalite intaglios, 737
 on trade packages, 742–3
 of Nisā, 1081
 of Darius, 1082 n. 4
 seal-stone, 1098
 Sasanian stamp seals, 1099
see also, bullae, glyptic art
- Sebēos, Armenian chronicler, 522, 524
- Sēbukht, Persian marzubān of Hajar, 608–9
- Sebüktigīn, Ghaznavid prince, 213
- "Seert, Chronicle of", 710, 879, 881, 882, 885, 930, 936
 source value assessed, 1276
- sak/Sai*, *see* Sakas
- Seleucia, harbour serving Antioch, on the lower Orontes, 4
- Seleucia on the Erythraean Sea, 823
- Seleucia on the Eulaeus, *see* Susa
- Seleucia on the Hedyphon, 307, 309, 823
- Seleucia-in-Pieria, 36
- Seleucia-on-the-Tigris, 39, 45, 69, 94, 485, 489, 509, 715
 capital of Seleucus, 4, 482
 spice trade, 11
 mint, 12, 40, 49; of the Parthians, 43, 66, 86, 88, 92, 96, 282–98; coins of the rebel state, 685
- Babylonians transferred to, 17
- Parthian Babylonian capital, 40; commercial and political centre, 719–21, 739, 755–6; trade diverted from, 722, 739
- fortified by Mithradates III, 49
- captured by Surenas, 49
- rebellion against the Parthians, 71–4, 720–1; capitulation, 76; replaced by Vologesias, 86
- massacre of Jews, 73
- in Trajan's Parthian war, 90; burnt, 91, 93, 297
- abortive Arsacid restoration, 97
- Christian council/synod of 410 A.D., 143, 931–3, 940
- Arab embassy to Kūk, 603
- elections to the senate, 719–20
- becomes Sasanian Vēh-Ardashir, 724, 758
- city-complex Seleucia-Ctesiphon, *see* Ctesiphon
- Seleucias, three, in Elymais, 713
- Seleucid dynasty, 3–20, 28–38 *passim*, 113
 origins, 4
 dependence on Greece, 4
 dynastic wars, 5, 6, 34
 end of rule in Iran, 7
 nature of kingship, 7, 10, 695, 824–5
 chronological table, 18–20
 succumbs to the Arsacids, 28–38 *passim*
 in Iranian traditional history, 378, 387
 royal demesne, 660
 entourage, 689
 court traditions, 709
 court dating system, 781–2
- Seleucid empire, 3–20, 28–38 *passim*
 political history, 4–7
 political organisation, 7–12
 administrative divisions, 8, 725–6, 1263
 the economy, 11–12
 Greek and Iranian, 12–18, 111
 language, 13, 16, 17
 religion, 14, 792, 821–34, 866–74 *passim*
 law, 15
 chronological table, 18–20
 succumbs to the Arsacids, 28–38
 in eastern Iran, 185–8
 Egyptian invasion, 187

INDEX

- Seleucid empire (*cont.*)
 Eucratides, Seleucid emissary? 189
 Transoxiana expedition, 237; limits of power, 238–9
 the Seleucid era, 386–7, 781
 in Mesopotamia, 481, 482–3, 492
 and Armenia, 510–13
 and the Arabs, 593–4
 time-reckoning in, 778, 781–2, 785
 Jews, 910
see also art, coinage, *polis*, etc.
- Seleucus I Nicator, 378, 719, 824, 949
 founds Seleucid dynasty, 4, 185
 makes Antioch his capital, 4–5
 reconquest of the eastern provinces of Iran, 185, 236
 loses eastern provinces to Mauryas, 186
 coinage, 299, 302
 as ruler of the east, founder of cities, 482
 takes Syria and Mesopotamia, 509
 and Dura-Europos, 715–16
 dating of reign, 781
- Seleucus II Callinicus
 eastern campaign, 28
 repelled by Arsaces, 31
 and religion, 824
- Seleucus III Soter, 824
- Seleucus IV
 brother of Antiochus IV, 32
- Selinus, 91
- Selkuni, Armenian noble family, 530
- šemšā*, sun, 937
- Sēn, 1180, 1182
- šēnakān*, defined, 1276
- Sera Metropolis, *see* Lo-yang
- Serapion, bishop of Antioch, 926
- Serapita, Georgian princess, 515
- Seraspadenes, son of Phraates IV, 67
- Seres, the, 549 and n. 2, 551 and n. 2
- Sergius of Resapha, St, 574, 585, 896
- Serindia (a region of the Tārim?), 549
- Sevan, Lake, 513
- Severianus, Roman general, 93
 army destroyed at Elegia, Armenia, 93
- Severus, Alexander, 124
- Severus, Septimius, Emperor, 94, 297
 campaign in northern Mesopotamia, 94, 117
 assumes title of Parthicus Maximus, 94
 and Hatra, 484, 491, 596
 pillages Ctesiphon, 490
- Sha-chou/Şacū/Shachū, 271, 274, 1239, 1241
- Shādūs, son of Gōdarz, 450
- Shahbā', élite Hīra force, 600
- Shāhbāzgarhī, Aśoka rock edict at, 950
- Shāhīn, general of northern Persian army, 168
 against Byzantines, 169–70
- Shāh-jī-kī Dherī, stūpa at, 954–5
- Shāb-nāma*, *see* Firdausī
- shābār*, *shābdār*, kingdom or province, ruler, 696, 726, 729–31, 698–9
- shārab*, municipal official, 723–5, 731, 736
- Shahrbarāz, Sasanian general, 168, 404
 takes Jerusalem, 168
 against Byzantines, 169–70
 takes Sasanian throne by force, 170
 death, 171
- Shahrevar, 355
- Shahr-i Qūmis site, 39 n. 4
- Shahr-i Sabz, *see* Kish
- shabristān*, walled city, 1145
- Shabristānbā i Erānshāb*, 727, 732
 as source for Iranian geography, 750–74
passim, 1188, 1278
- Shahristāni, Islamic heresiographer, 419
 on Mazdakism, 994, 997, 1001; theology, 1006–8, 1010–12 *passim*; on the Bātinis, 1015–18 *passim*
 on Zoroaster, 1174
- Shahnāz, wife of Dahāk, 416
- Shahryār, father of Yazdgard III, 171
- Shai'bān, Arab tribe, 601, 608
- Shamanism, 839, 852, 862, 907, 1229
- Shamash, 532
- Shāmi, 844
 temple, 871, 1043
 statue, 1043, 1048
- Shamiran (Semiramis?), 472
- Shammar Yuhar'ish, Arab king, 602–3
- Shanfynya/Ch'anföng, brother of Magua, 243
- Shang, Chinese dynasty, 537
 culture, 538
- Shan-shan, 265, 958–9
- Shāpūr I, son of Ardashīr, king of kings of Iran and non-Iran, 96, 119–27 *passim*, 139, 604, 736, 759, 770, 776, 1208
 regnal dates, 119; coronation date, 783 and n. 4
 joint rule with Ardashīr, 124
 coinage, 124, 325–6, 334; as art, 1056
 against the Romans, 125–6; Valerian captured, 126, 519; cameo picture, 1101
 subject rulers, 126–7, 701, 729–30
 internal affairs, 127
 ruler of the Kushān empire, 203, 209
 in Transoxiana, 258
 rock-reliefs and inscriptions, 322, 485;
 as art, 1082–4; *see also* Hājiābād,

INDEX

- Shāpūr I (*cont.*)
 Ka'ba-yi Zardusht, Naqsh-i Rajab,
 Tang-i Borāq
 in traditional history, 365, 379, 380–1,
 392–3, 397, 401, 407, 473–4, 1188
 and Mesopotamia, 485
 and Hatra, 491, 596
 and Mānī, 500, 616, 858, 969, 1196
 and Armenia, 519
 builds the Shushtar dam, 563
 Hellenic tastes, 591
 Sābūr al-Jutūd, 596
 siblings, children and grandchildren, 707–8
 his councils of nobles, 707–8
 founder of cities, 724–5, 751, 759, 769
 religion under, 877–80
 and his Jewish subjects, 914
 Christians deported, 929, 935
 edict of tolerance, 936
 builder of Tāq-i Kisrā, 1062; palace at
 Bishāpūr, 1064
 depicted at Firuzābād, 1078
 colossal statue of, near Bishāpūr, 1089
 Shāpūr II, son of Hormizd II, 132–42, 154,
 258, 426, 570, 612, 630, 733, 772, 776,
 1072, 1085, 1209
 centralisation of authority in the Sasanian
 empire, 133, 139; Susa revolt against, 726
 against Arabs, 136, 603
 alliance with the nomad Chionites (Huns),
 137, 211
 defence of the empire, 138–9
 religious persecution, 139, 499, 585, 915,
 936
 ruler as head of church and state, 140
 siege of Amida, 210
 siege of Roman fortress of Nisibis, 211
 war-mints and payments in settlements,
 331, 334
 conquest of Kushān western empire, 334,
 847–8
 in traditional history, 379, 395, 399, 401,
 405, 407, 409–10; wisdom of, 381;
 spying, 400
 in Mesopotamia, 485, 499, 759
 in Armenia, 521
 confiscates Manichaeon property, 734
 and religion, 885–7, 933–5
 weaver settlements, 1107–8
 Shāpūr III, successor to Ardashir II, 140,
 485, 693
 coinage, 330, 693
 and religion, 889
 Tāq-i Bustān rock-relief, 1085, 1209
 Shāpūr, king of Mesene, son of Shāpūr I,
 126, 701, 707, 712, 730
 Shāpūr, a son of Hormizd II, king of the
 Sakas, 140–1
 inscription at Persepolis, 140
 Shāpūr, son of Yazdgard I, 144
 Shāpūr, legendary hero, 459
 Shāpūr, king of Sakastān, 682, 1209
 Shāpūr, son of the king of Mesene, 708
 Shāpūr, son of Pāpak, king of Persis, 708,
 874–5
 short reign, 118
 Shāpūr, *framatur* of Shāpūr I, 736
 Shāpūr, *pītāxf* at the court of Shāpūr I, 736
 Shāpūrak, elder brother of Ardashir I, 703
Shāpūrakān, see Mānī
 Shāpūrukht, wife of Narseh, king of
 Sakastān, 712
 Shāpūrukhtak, daughter of the king of
 Mesene, 708
 Shāpūrukhtak, wife of Narseh, 708
 Sharvīn, Mazdakite martyr (the andarzgar?),
 1013
 Shāt al-'Arab, 487, 500
 Shaukar, Khwārazmshāh, 260
 Shāvashfar, king of Chorasmia, 255
 Shāvurān, 459
 Sheherezade/*Chirāzād*, 497
 “Shepherd of Hermas”, 1201
 Shībarghan, 193
Shib-chi, 232, 241, 1265
 Shih Wan-nien, chief of Hami, 273
 Shī's, 1006, 1022
 Shi'ite rites, 451
 extremists/Rāfiidis, 1001, 1010
ghulāt and Mazdakite doctrines, 1001–2
 Kaisāni sects, 1002 and n. 3, 1022–3
 Mazdakites appearing as, 1014
 doctrinal similarity with Bātinis and
 Khurramis, 1016
 Shimbār, 14 n. 8, 754
 rock-sculpture, 1043
shinakan, Armenian peasantry, 529
 Shiragān/Sirjān, 772
 Shirak, 531
 Shirāz, 129, 733, 742
 Shirin, Christian wife of Khusrau II, 166,
 171, 586, 946
 became a Monophysite, 172
 in traditional history, 383, 406
 an ideal of womanhood, 500
 palace of, 1068
 Shiroe/Shiroy, became king as Kavād II,
see Kavād II
 Shīshpir, king of Samarkandian Sughd,
 256

INDEX

- Shiz/Chēs, 121, 452, 762–3, 846, 890
 fire of Gushnāsp at, 172, 895, 999
 written tradition of its Magi, 989
 religious centre of Takht-i Sulaiman, 1087
 palace, 1087
 lost mosaics and paintings, 1088
 Shotorak, 2nd-century relief at, 955
 Shou-ch'ang, 271
 Shuang-mi, 246
 Shughnān, 1231
 Shūmān, 260
 Shuo Chou, 274
 Shūshandukht/Susannah, *see* Soshandukht
 Shushtar/Shōstar/Sostrate, 500, 563, 581,
 753
 Sian, Shensi province, 176
 Si-an-fu, Christian-Chinese stele of, 616
 Siberia, 537, 549
 Sibyrtius, officer of Alexander, 185
 receives Arachosia, 185
si dāng zamin, defined, 504
 “sides”, administrative divisions, 731–2
 see also ptykwspn
 Sidra Rabbā, the Mandean Book of Kings,
 422
 Sien-pi, rivals of Hsiung-nu, 211
 Sigal/Sigara, royal residence in Sagistān, 774
 Sigān, Caucasian protectorate, 765
 Siksānanda, Khotanese Buddhist missionary, 963
 Silaces
 brings Crassus’ head to Orodes I, 56
 Šiladharma, Khotanese Buddhist missionary, 963
 Silanus, Creticus, governor of Syria, 69
 silk trade, 147–53, 560, 762
 through the Kushān empire, 198
 terminus Sera Metropolis, 211
 Byzantine–Ethiopian negotiations, 157
 Sogdian trade, 272–3, 552–3, 739
 Silk road geography, 547–9, 738–9;
 Caucasian route, 741
 silk production spreads, 549–50, 571,
 581–2, 757
 state monopoly of Justinian, 549, 570
 return trade from China, 550–1
 Sasanian monopoly, 571
 allied Sogdian settlements, 615
 transit taxes, 624
 disruption, 741 and n. 2
 and Ubulla, 755
 Jews and, 912–13
 weaving in Iran, 1108
 Sasanian textiles, 1109–10
silphicum, 564
 silverware, Sasanian, 1091–4, 1113–29
 Parthian forerunners, 1115
 propaganda court silver, 1117 and n. 6
 craft organization, 1126
 production techniques, 1127–9
 Silziboulos, ruler of the Turks, 156
 Simeon, disciple of Māni, 968
 Simeon b. Gamaliel, 917–18
 Simon bar Sabbā'ē, bishop of Seleucia–
 Ctesiphon, 931
 Simurgh/Saēna bird, 346, 373–4, 377, 389,
 453–4, 457
 Sin, the moon-god, 447
 Sinatruces/Sanatrūk, Arsacid king, successor
 to Orodes I, 42, 92, 287–8
 coinage, 42 n. 3, 44
 dynastic struggles in Parthian empire,
 44–5
 exiled with the Sacaraucae, 44
 genealogy, 687–8
 Sind, territory in eastern Iran, 126
Sindbād-nāma, 475, 1168
 Sindukht, mother of Rōdāba, 464
 Singafu, inscription from, 500
 Singara, 88, 138, 761
 evacuated by Jovian, 483
Sini mulük al-ard wa'l-anbiyā', *see* Hamza
 Ḫisfahānī
 Sinica, 767
śini'pu, śini'pat, for “two-thirds”, 504
 Sinjār, 499
 Yazidis in, 501
 Sinjibu / Silzibul, Turkish Khān, alliance
 with Khusrav I against Hepthalites,
 215
 Sin-Kiang, 268, 1216
 Sinnaces, Parthian nobleman, 73
 undermines Parthian position in Armenia,
 73
 Sinope, 107
 Sipand Fortress, 453
 Sippar, 71 n. 2
 Sirāf, fortified port, 751, 1057
 Sirjān/Shiragān, 772
 Sirōza, Pahlavī version of the, 901
 Sisamnes, leader of the people of Aria, 181
 Sisinnios, 883
 Sistān/Sakastān, 128, 140, 195, 210, 285,
 355, 373, 377, 430, 433, 439, 442, 453,
 705, 951, 1159
 Saka invasion of Bactria, 193, 1230
 quelled by Bahrām II, 210; son becomes
 Sakānshāh, 210
 origin of Rustam legend? 455–6
 succumbs to Sasanian centralisation, 729–
 31
 geography, 773–5

INDEX

- Sistān (*cont.*)
 alternative names for, 1230–1
see also Kūh-i Khwāja
 “Sistān, History of”, 11th-century work, 213, 363, 430
sīrār, 502
 Sīva, 206, 850
 Siyāmak, son of Gayōmard/son of Mashya and Mashyana, 370–2, 385, 417, 427
 Siyāmī, 421
Siyar al-Muluk (*Siyāsat-nāma*), *see* Niżām al-Mulk
 Siyāvush/Syāvaršan/Syāvakhš, son of Kāvūs, 359, 390, 400, 407, 411, 431–2, 435, 448–51, 464, 475
 cult of, 363, 449–51
 death of, 375, 442–3; as martyred saint, 450
 and Pīrān, 443
 and Khwārazm, 1136
 Siyāvush, executed by Kavād, 893
 Sizdah-bi-dar, 502
jīrbh, caravan, 740
skaitī, Ahrimanic plague, 1216
 Skandagupta, Gupta emperor of India, 214
 resists invasion of the Huns, 214
 Skanda Kumara, 850
Skand Gumānik Vītar, 920, 939
skn MLKT, the title “lady”, 712–13
skn MR'TH, title, 713
 Skuthas, 1230
 slaves, slavery, 634–5, 674, 739, 745, 760
 in Armenia, 509, 528
 warrior-slaves, 700
 and Mazdak's social theory, 1020
 of the Abū Sa'ídīs, 1024
see also *hierodoulōi*, law
 Slavs, 169
 reconquest of the Byzantine empire, 170
 Smbat, head of the house of Bagratuni, 165
śmny, Buddhist, 907
 Snāvidhaka, 430
 social structure and organisation, 631–55
passim
 legendary origins of estates, 371, 397
 divisions promoted by traditional history, 397–8
 emphasis on descent, 406
 feudal, 528–31
 estates, 632–3, 738 n. 3, 893
 civic status, 633–4
 non-citizens, 634–40
 categories of nobility, 698–707
see also agnatic groups, slaves etc.
 Sogdiana/Sogdia/Sughd, Sogdians, 121, 126, 182, 235–6, 239, 242, 270, 438, 456, 549, 563, 739, 741, 822, 957, 1198
 Arab conquest of Iran, 175
 trade with China, 175, 551–3 and n. 1, 558 and the Sasanians, 176; under Sasanian governors, 210
 army under Azanes, 181
 against the Macedonians, 183
 with Alexander, 185
 nomads invade Bactria, 192
 as agriculturalists in Transoxiana, 232, 244
 coinage, 235, 238, 240, 244–5, 252–3
 partial Greek rule, 240
 Bukharan Sughd, 246, 250, 257
 Samarkandian Sughd, 246, 250, 259; coinage, 256
 and Kushān power, 249
 Hephthalite conquest, 259
 in China, 270–4, 557–8 and n. 4, 619–20, 954
 astronomy, 273
 and Siyāvush, 449
 settled by the Ta Yüeh-chih, 540; by the Ta-yüan (?), 541–2
 influence on the Turks, Uighurs, 613–24
passim; religious, 617–21; linguistic, 617–24
 Silk Road settlements, 615; “Ancient Letters”, 270, 615, 1227
 religion, 615–16, 861, 938; texts, 1221–7
 Buddhism, 959–62; texts, 1221–3
 Manichaeism, 960, 987–8; texts, 616, 1202, 1204; a Mazdakite area, 1001
 and the Zoroastrian calendar, 787, 789, 811–12; table, 814–15
 art, 1141–2, 1144–8
 Rustam fragments, 1146, 1157, 1229
 geography, 1216
 outline history, 1216–17
 language and literature, 1216–20; *see also* languages, scripts
 Iranian terms for “Sogdian”, 1217
 Sohaemus, 93
 So-ked/Sāketa, 958
 Solomon, King, 426
soma, *see haoma*
 Soma/Haoma, cult god, *see* Haoma
 Sophagasesus, Indian prince, 188
 treaty with Antiochus III, 188
 ruler of northern Maurya empire, 189
 Sophene, kingdom of, 510, 512–13
 list of kings, 507
 sorcerers, magicians
yatis as, 349
pairikās, 349
 and the Magians, 827

INDEX

- sorcerers (*cont.*)
 bowl-magicians, 920
see also karpans
 Soshandukht / Shūshandukht / Susannah,
 Jewish wife of Yazdgard I, 144, 499
 Sōšyans, commentator on the Avesta, 629,
 1172, 1177, 1194
 Sōšyant/*saošyant*, Zoroastrian saviour, 355–
 7, 386–7, 414–19 *passim*, 429–31, 452,
 460, 468, 860
 Soteira, 823
 Soter, ruler of Bactria, house of Eucratides,
 189
 Sotes Megas, Kushān ruler, 200
 Spāhān, 752–3
see also Iṣfahān
 spābbad, general/local ruler, 154, 172, 588–9,
 645, 704, 1006
spābbad spābbadān, 689
 Spalirises, Saka ruler, 194
 Spandārmad (the Earth), 355, 417
Spand Nask
 and the “Selections of Zātspram”, 1191
see also Dēnkard
 Spandurtān, 729
 Spandyād, son of Gushtāsp, 467, 1157 n. 1
sparapei, generalissimo, 530
 Spasines, 487
 Spasino Charax/Antiochia, 75, 310–14, 487
 740, 756
 Seleucid Antioch(ia), 40, 310
 capital of Hyspaosines, 40, 594
 mint, 40, 310–12
 Karakā dō-Mēšān, 487, 755
 *Starābād-Ardashīr, 755
 identification of site, 755
spaspet, commander, 514–15
 Spendād, Iranian noble clan, 704
 Spāntā.Ārmaiti, 346, 829
 Spāntā Mainyu, 426
 Sphendadates/Spānto.dāta, *see* Isfandiyār
spāhpety, 704
 spice trade, 12, 551 n. 1(b), 560, 594, 739, 756
 spies, royal, 718
spibr, defined, 901
 Spitamenes, 239, 1216
 daughter Apame, 4
 against the Macedonians, 183
 Sporaces, 88
'spptl'sppty, commander of the cavalry, 703,
 706
 SPR, *see* dabirān
śpstn, Sasanian municipal eunuch, 724
śpyl'ly, sword-bearer, 710
śpystn, title of eunuch, 713
 Sri-Vijitta Sagrāma, Khotan ruler, 269
 Srōsh/Sraosha/Surōsh, 372, 860, 1194
 Sri-ñō, stūpa of, 958
śandrāmatā-/śri/śponta ārmaitiś, 1242
śsau, 1232
śsu, churches, 554
 Ssū-ma Ch'ien, historian, 541
 Stakhr/Iṣtakhr, a summer capital of the
 Sasanians, 13, 117–18, 171, 302, 391–2,
 402, 472, 609, 705, 733, 751, 846, 874,
 888, 903
 fire-temple, 378; Sasanian dynastic temple,
 121, 706, 751, 875, 882, 884, 897, 903
 text of the Avesta at, 591
 first Sasanian coins, 1055
 architectural fragments, 1035 and n. 2,
 1047
stāra/sitāra, star, 498
 Stasanor, officer of Alexander, 185
 receives Aria and Drangiana, 185; Bactria
 and Sogdiana, 236
 Statianus Oppius, general of Mark Antony,
 59
 statute labour, 564
stemma, symbol of Victory, 1080
 Stephen I, Iberian prince, 523
 Stephen II, 523
 steppes
 nomad economic and cultural unity of,
 538–9
 Turkish and Uighur empires of, 616–17
 Sthaviras, Buddhist faction, 951
stirps, and agnatic group organisation,
 642
śtld'n/MLK', kings, 699, 700–1, 703, 706,
 708
strata as loan-word, 563
Strategikon, 581
 strategos, elected city head, 510, 512, 717
 Strato I, Indo-Bactrian ruler, 190
 coinage, 191 and n. 2
 Strato II, 194
 coinage, 191 n. 2
 Stratonic Thea, Queen, cult of, 824
śtrdstn, defined, 732
śtrdstn MN prwry KHDH/MHWZ' ‘M
 prybr hmkwṣy, administrative unit of a
 city and its rural district, 725
 stucco decorations, 1044, 1049–50, 1064,
 1070–3, 1096–7
 in Iraq, 493
stūpas, 951–9 *passim*, 1145
 of Aśoka, 951
stūr, *stūrib*, substitute successorship, 640,
 649, 653–5, 658, 1000
stūrik pus, son, 653–5
stūr i kartak, 666

INDEX

- Subkārī, Khaljī Mamlük of the Ṣaffārid
 Ya'qūb/Sebük-eri, 213
- Successors, War of the 185,
 Eumenes against Antigonus, 96, 185
- Su-chou/Sauhā-cū/Chiu-ch'üan, 274
- Sūdāba/Su'dā, a wife of Kāvūs, 375, 447,
 464
- Südgar/Sütkar Nask*, see *Dēnkard*
- Sudhana and Manoharā, Khotanese text,
 1238
- suffa*, wall bench, 1142
- Sughd, see Sogdiana
- Šuhār, 604
- Suhrāb, son of Rustam, 374, 453, 456, 464
- Sui, dynasty, 546
- Sui shu*, “Sui History”, 250, 550
- Sukhāvati, Maitreya's paradise, 556–7
- Sūkhhrā, father of Burzmihr, 404
- Sulaimān, mountains, 193
- Sun, 425, 695, 798, 800, 886, 889
 Hvar, sun yazad, 465
 Šamaš, sun god, 484, 870
 Yazidi sacrifice to, 501
 Armavir temple, 512, 534
- Leucothea, sun goddess, 533
- Hatra shrine, 596, 870
- Indian sun-worship, 850–1
- Ohrmazd/Urmaysde/sun, 902
- Christian rejection of cult of, 937–8
 see also Mithra, Mithraism
- Sunbād, revolt of, 1003
- Sunbādiyya*, name given to extremist Shi'is,
 1001
- Mazdakites, 1004
- Šunga dynasty of India, 952
- Sun Gate/Yang-kuan, 548
- Sunnism, 1022
- Su-nu-li-chi-fa-lo (Qaşraqand and Poura?),
 777
- Supiyas/Sum-pa, 267
- Šuppili-uma, Hittite king, 412
- Suren, house of, 41, 120, 130, 176, 683,
 703
- Suren governor of Armenia, 159; death,
 159
- coronants of the Arsacids, 704, 720
- origins, 705
- Surenas, house of Suren, 41, 635
 general of Orodes II, 49
 takes city of Seleucia, 49
 against Crassus, 50
 personal name, 51
 battle of Carrhae, 52–5; tactics, 52–3
 opposes Romans in Mesopotamia, 55
- Šuriliāš, sun god, 412
- Surkhān Daryā, river, 240, 248–9, 257
- Surkh Kotal (ancient Baghlān), 844, 850–1,
 866
- two Bactrian inscriptions, 200, 213, 956;
 and Kushān chronology, 200–1
- fire temple of Kanishka I, 204
- inscription of Nokonzok, 248, 1250–1,
 1255–7
- sanctuary founded by Kanishka I, 1044–6,
 1250 n. 1; statues, 1048; no vaulting,
 1052
- Surōsh, see Srōsh
- Sur Saxvan*, 1184, 1186
- surūd*, song, 449
- surūr*, Joy, 1005–6
- Sūryaloka, paradise, 851
- Sūryat, 412
- šuš/šuššum < šudšum, a “sixth”, 504
- Susa/Shūsh, 10–15, 312, 402, 481–3, 493,
 499–500, 720, 726, 753, 846, 896, 1107
 inscriptions, 22, 65 and n. 1, 1101 n. 5,
 1216, 1262; of Khvāsak, 688, 691
 lost to the Seleucids, 34
- mint, 40, 44, 48, 282, 285, 287, 291, 306–8,
 866
- letter/inscription of Artabanus III, 69,
 682, 718
- Artabanus IV gains control, 94
- Anāhitā cult statue, 100
- the Sasanian court, 121
- revolt against the Sasanians, 136, 726
- renamed Iran Khwarrah Shāpūr, 136,
 726, 753
- stele, 681, 735, 1042, 1153; sculpture,
 1042; frescoes, 1088; two cupels, 1098;
 glassware, 1104; silverware, 1114
- as Seleucia on the Eulaeus, 822–3, 1032
- palace of Darius, 1027
- glass industry, 1105
- weavers settle, 1107–8
- Susiana, 724, 730, 753, 929–31
- Egypt invades, 187
- Mazdak a native of, 991
- Suśravas, 451
- Su-tē, king of Sogdiana, 552
- Sūtralāṇikā/Kalpanāmaṇḍitikā*, 205
- “The Sūtra of the Wise Man and the Fool”,
 963
- Svaneti, 521
- svayamvara*, ancient Indian marriage, 650
- Svenetia, 158
- syndics, 741
- synedrion, 689–90
- synkāthedros*, 971 and n. 2
- synodiarch, 740
- synoikismos*, of the Sasanian capital, 489
- Syr Daryā, river, see Jaxartes

Cambridge University Press
 978-0-521-24693-4 — The Cambridge History of Iran
 Volume 3: The Seleucid, Parthian and Sasanid Periods
 Index
[More Information](#)

INDEX

- Syria, 37, 56, 93, 114, 365, 379, 412, 446, 483, 510, 512, 514, 518, 588, 596–7, 612, 731, 759, 783, 831, 1208
 Parthians raid, 56–7
 Sasanian–Roman conflict, 125
 the Huns invade, 142
 Sasanian–Byzantine conflict, 152, 155, 159, 523; and the Arabs, 603
 expansion of the Sasanian empire, 168, 170
 and Seleucus I, 482, 509
 and Pompey, 483
 and Arab migration, 484, 599
 Khirbet-Kerak pottery culture, 505
 trade, 548, 552, 739; glass, 550–1
 silk manufacture, 571, 581, 912
 religion, 586, 821, 986
 penetration of Mesopotamian society, 717, 719
 poll-tax, 745
 Syrinx, 187
- Tabae/Tabai, 32 and n. 6, 483
 Tabari, author of *Ta'rikh al-rusul wa-l-muluk/Annals*, 360, 363, 370, 378, 393, 421, 430–70 *passim*, 723, 1279
 on the end of the Arsacids, 473
 on Ardashir, 411–12, 591
 on the tax-reforms of Khrusrau I, 587, 745–6
 on the Lakhmids, 600
 on Mazdak, 998–1000
 source-value assessed, 1280, 1282
 Tabaristān, 323, 373, 446–7, 689
 a Mazdakite area, 1001
 Māziyāriyya in, 1004
 and “The Letter of Tansar”, 1184
 “History of Ṭabaristan”, *see* Ibn Isfandyār
 Tabghach, of Northern Wei, 616, 623
 Tabriz, 64
 Tabriz/Aji Chai river, 64
Tabula Peutingeriana, 46, 576, 1230
 as source for Sasanian geography, 751–77 *passim*
 Ta-ch'in (the Roman east), 543
 Tadmor, 484
 Taēra/Tērag, the Peak of high Harā, 351
 Tafrish, 216
 Taghib, 603, 608, 609
 Ta-hia/Ta-hsia, *see* Bactria
 Tahmāsp/Tumāspa, father of Zāb, 435
 Tahmina, daughter of the king of Samangān, 453
Tabmōrāth, 402, 422, 423
 feats and achievements, 371
 and chronology in traditional history, 384
 Taxma Urupa, 414
 Tai, 487
 T'ai-hang mountains, 538
 Taimā, 593
 T'ai Tsung, emperor of China, 547
Tajārib al-umam, *see* Miskawīh
 Tajikistan, 241, 245, 248–9
 Takht-i Bahī inscription
 accession of Gondophares, 197
 Kushān Kujula Kadphises, 198
 Takht-i Qubād, 1143
 Takht-i Sulaimān, 762–3, 889
 bullae found at, 734, 742, 1098
 sanctuary, 1074–7
 palace of Shiz, 1087
takht-i tāqdis, the throne of Khusrau II, 1087, 1101
 covered by a carpet, 1108
 Takrit/Peloriarca, 759
 Takṣaśilā, *see* Taxila
 Tal-i Barzu, 1142
 Tāliqān, 259
 Tal-i Zohak, Fārs, 1037
 Talkharūd, 64
 Tall al-Kanīsa, 71 n. 2
 Talmud, 490, 711, 744–5, 760, 803
 language, 499
 Babylonian, 588, 631, 640, 914, 921, 923
 Tamar, Georgian queen, 527
 Tambrax, 187
 mint, 283
 Tamīm, Arab tribe, 601
 Tammīsha, 24 n. 2
 Tammuz, 458
tamyīz, Discernment, 1006
tan, to designate slave, 635
 Tanaīs, 467–8
tanāruk, reincarnation, 1001
 Tanbih, *see* Mas'ūdī
 Tang-Āb gorge, rock sculptures, 96
 T'ang dynasty, 235, 267, 324, 546–8
 conquest of Qočo, 272
 T'ang History, 267, 547, 553, 960
 New T'ang History, 547, 553
 Tang-i Borāq, inscription of Shāpūr I, 1165, 1208–9
 Tang-i Khōshk, inscriptions, 1212
 Tang-i Sarvak site, 95 n. 2, 681, 735, 844, 866, 871
 dynastic shrines, 754
 rock-sculptures and inscriptions, 1043–4, 1078, 1081; frontality in, 1051
 T'angri Khan, Khazar god, 470
 Tannaim, 925 n. 5
tan i pasim, defined, 368
 Tansar/Tōsar, counsellor of Ardashir I, 379, 395, 877, 883, 901

INDEX

- Tansar (*cont.*)
 an ascetic, 1184
see also “Tansar, The Letter of”
 “Tansar, The Letter of”, 363, 392, 410, 631,
 731–2, 765, 876, 933, 1184, 1272
 on social class, 397, 999 n. 2
 on the Arsacid period, 473–4, 475
 on the council of nobles and succession to
 the throne, 698–90, 888
 source-value assessed, 1272 and n. 5
 Tantric art and texts, 962
 Tanūkh, Arab tribe, 596, 599
tanura, oven, 495
 Taocae/Tauwaj/Tavvaz, 751
 Taoists, 537, 553
 and Manichaeism, 862
 Taokhoi, 513
 Tapurians, 766
 Tāq-i Bustān, rock reliefs, 140–1, 891, 1104,
 1108, 1085, 1122 n. 1, 1124 n. 4
 depicting Khusrau II, 171; sacred grotto,
 1085–9
 the great *aīvān*, 693
 investiture reliefs; Ardashir II, 864;
 Pērōz, 891 and n. 5
 Sasanian motives for move from Persis to,
 888
 text of Shāpūr III, 1209
 Tāq-i Kisrā palace, at Ctesiphon, 162, 592,
 612
 architecture, 489, 1062–4
 Tāq-Iwān, at Karkh, 612
 Tarafa, poet, 609
 Tarim river and basin, 209, 544–6, 549, 553,
 558, 616, 958
 Tarkhūn, king of Samarkandian Sughd, 256,
 259
 Taron, province of, 513
 Tarsus, Byzantine, general, 168
 Tarsus, in Cilicia, 731
 Tārūt, bishopric on, 757
tasqa, land-tax, 744
 Tashkent, 127
tasük, administrative district, 628, 732
t'a téng, rugs, 550
 Tathāgatas, 863
 Tathryāvant, 466
 Tatian, *Diatessaron*, 927
taurobolia, 846, 855
tāvān, fine, 671
ta'wil, in Bātinī belief, 997, 1016
 taxation, 398, 403, 407–8, 716, 719, 726, 731,
 744–6
 Seleucid, 11, 13, 714
 Achaemenian and Seleucid village
 organisation, 110
 early Sasanian, 132
 Christian tax doubled, 139
 reform of Khusrau I, 153–4, 587–8,
 745–6; effect on coinage, 333
 Arabs exact lighter taxes, 175
 customs dues, 571, 603, 741
 Lakhmid, 599, 601; *itāwa*, 601
jizya, Arab poll-tax on minorities, 609,
 1022; Sasanian, 1280; *karga/keroga*, 745,
 920
 transit taxes, 624
 on private property, 659
'psyk, religious tax, 694, 904
 from the Parthian *polis*, 722
 Parthian, on trade, 722
 the Sasanian ostāndār, 734; hamārkār,
 733–4, 737–8
 revenue from trade, 739–44 *passim*; bal-
 sam, 739; Zeugma fair, 740; state
 monopolies, 741
 tax-farmers, 741
 Parthian, 744–5; land-taxes, 744–5; poll-
 taxes, 745; the *phoros*, “royal” and
 local taxes, 745
 Sasanian, 745–6; land-tax improved, 746;
 poll-tax extended, 746
 produce tax, 746, 760
 and Sasanian Jews, 914–15
 in Lahsā, 1024
 Taxila/Takṣaśilā, Indo-Parthian city, 76, 82,
 849, 951, 956, 1035
 conquered by Gondophares, 51
 Greek invasion of India, 189
 copper-plate of Patika, 190, 194
 mint, 191, 194
 Apollodotus II regains control, 196
 Greeks against Sakas, 196
 Bactrian influence on art, 1049
 Taxma Urupa, *see* Tahmōrath
 Ta-yüan, 242, 852
 and Chang Ch'ien, 541–2
 location of, 541 and n. 1
 against Li Kuang-li, 542–3
 Ta Yüeh-chih, 540
 Tayy, Arab tribe, 167
 Tāz, son of Fravāk, 427
tazandaqa, tenets (of Mazdak), 600
ta'ziya, 451
 Tcherdyne plate, in the Hermitage, 1119 n.
 8, 1120
 Tejen, 439
 Tel Armen, 46 n. 3
 Tella, 916
 Tell Mahuz, finds from, 1105–6
 Tepe Hisar palace, *see* Dāmghan
 Tepe-i Rustam, outside Balkh, 956

INDEX

- Tepe Sialk, central Iran, 537
 Tepe Yahyā, 1057
 Terek pass, 543, 548
 Tēspōn, *see* Ctesiphon
 Teštar/Tištrya/Tiri, *see* Tir
 Tetri Giorgi, 534
 textiles, Sasanian, 1107–12
 see also silk trade
 Tha'ālibī, author of *Ghurāt akhbār mulūk al-Furs*, 362, 365, 369, 375, 393, 407, 449–50, 453, 468–9, 750, 885, 1101, 1184, 1281
 account of Rustam, 456–7
 depiction of Arsacid kings, 475
 on Mazdakite doctrine, 998
 “Khusrau and the Page” in, 1182–3
 Thaimarsa, a Palmyrene synodarch, 740
 Thamaeneans of Arachosia, 433 n. 3, 439
 Thea Musa/Thesmusa/Thermousa, mother of Phraataces, 67 and n. 3, 68, 712
 consort of Phraates IV, 67, 292
 themes, 587
 Theodor bar Kōnai, writer, 965, 967, 1277
 Acta Archelai, 970, 973–4
 Theodore of Mopsuestia, theologian, 576, 938, 944
 Theodosiopolis/Karin (present Erzerum), 151, 763
 Theodosius I, Roman emperor, 141
 death, 142, 499
 Theodosius II, son of Arcadius, 144–5, 578–9, 755, 940
 Theodosius, eldest son of the Emperor Maurice, 167
 killed, 167
 Theodosius, purported son of the Emperor Maurice, 167, 578
 Theonesios, 312
 Theophanes, 997, 1013
theos, as Armenian royal title, 525
 Theravāda, 951
 Thilutha, 1269
thm špwbr, city founded by Shāpūr I, 725
 Thomas, the Apostle, 953, 968
 Thomas, Psalms of, 839–40
 Thondrakites, Manichaean sect, 536
 Thor, 428
 “The Thousand and One Nights”, 497
 “The Thousand Tales”/*bazār af sānak*, 497
 Thrace, 509, 523
 Thraētaona/Farēdōn, *see* Frēdōn
 “Three Chapters”, Council of the, 576
 Thrīta, son of Sāyuzdri, 413
 Thrīta, of the house of Sāma, 429
 throne addresses, 395, 399, 402, 407
 Tiamat, 427
 Tiberias, 728
 Tiberius, adopted son of Augustus, 69, 114
 death, 74
 annexes Cappadocia, 114
 Tiberius, co-ruler of the Byzantine empire, 159, 162
 Tibet, Tibetans, 204, 263–9, 537, 616–17, 861, 862, 962
 Buddhist tradition, 204
 Tien, kingdom of, (modern Yünnan), 540
 Tien-shan, mountains, 548
 migration of the Hsiung-nu, 211
 Tiflis, 523, 1123
 Tigrai, 307
 usurper, 37
 Tigranes the Great, of Armenia, 286, 304, 525, 528, 529, 911
 a hostage in Parthia, 41
 against the Romans, 45–7
 restored to throne on partition, 47
 frontier dispute with Phraates III, 47
 collapse of vast empire of, 516
 Tigranes the Younger, son of Tigranes the Great, 46–7, 83
 raids the boundaries of Adiabene, 83
 against his father, 516
 Tigranocerta, Armenia's southern capital, 83
 Tigranes' new capital, 45
 location, 45 and n. 3, 46
 seized by Vologeses I, 79
 Roman–Parthian conflict, 83
 refounded as Martyropolis? 764
 Tigris, 40, 46, 74, 77, 89–90, 138, 153, 481, 489
 canal connecting to Euphrates, 121, 310
 identified with Ranja, 352
 Arab migration along, 484
 Tillā Tepe, near Shibarghan, Afghanistan, 193
 Sacaraucae treasure, 193
 Timarchus, minister to Antiochus IV, 32 and n. 2
 time-reckoning, 778–791
 calendars, 33, 502, 784–90, 868, 890, 1152; Julian, 779, 781–2, 787–8, 790; table, 791; Babylonian, 781, 784–5; Zoroastrian, 785–90; table, 814–15; intercalation, 786–8, 917; Old Persian, table, 812
 Seleucid era, 386–7, 781
 units of chronology, 778–9
 counting of years, 779–84; regnal years, 779–80; 783; the “historical” year, 780; the “accession” year, 780–1; eras, 781–2
 “Gāthā days”, intercalation and the “leaping” year, 805–11

INDEX

- Timesitheus, adviser to Emperor Gordian, 125
ting, pottery vessel, 537
 Tīr/Teštar/Tištrya, 498, 526, 803–4
 Tiragān, festival, 803
 Tiraios, 311–12, 487
 Tirdāt (Tiridates III?), 520
 Tiridates I, Arsacid king of Parthia, brother of Arsaces I, 26, 28
 historicity of, 29–30, 280, 686–8
 Tiridates, Parthian prince
 seizes power, 65
 kidnaps the son of Phraates IV, 65–6
 coinage, 66, 292, 685
 pretender to the throne, 71
 against Artabanus III, 73–4, 720
 Tiridates I, Arsacid king of Armenia, 79–85, 88, 95, 129
 Magian priest, 84
 Roman investiture, 85
 Great King of Armenia, 517; state organisation, 529–30
 Tiridates II, 519
 Tiridates III
 a Christian ruler, 518
 Tiridates, deposed from the Armenian throne by Osroes, 87
 Tiridates, son of Khosrov of Armenia, 125
 Tirmidh, 237, 240, 248, 956, 1142–3, 1256–7
 within the Greco-Bactrian dominions, 241
 Tishrin, 721
 Titius, Marcus, Roman governor of Syria, 67
 Titus of Bostra, 973
 Tobit, the book of, 498
 Tochari/Tocharians
 against the Parthians? 38–9
 the Yüeh-chih of the Chinese, 192
 Tukhāristān, 193
 into Gandhara, 193
 language, 200, 615–16, 961
 a Yüeh-chih tribe, 242
 and Uighur Buddhism, 618
 Saka connection, 1232
 see also Yüeh-chih
 Tochi valley, inscriptions from, 1256
 Tokhāristān, *see* Turkhāristān
 Tok-kala/Toq-qal'a, 255, 450
 ossuaries, 815 n. 1, 1140, 1245
 tolls
 river, 759
 road, 760
 T'o-pa Turks, 546
 Toprak-Kala, 255
 excavated, 1138–40
 Toquz-saray, 269
torah, and gnostic thought, 836
 Torah, the, 918–19, 921–2
 Toramana, Hūna chief, 214
tōšak, allowance, 651
 Tōsar, *see* Tansar
tōxm, agnatic group, 642
 Toyuq/Titiyāki/Ting-ku, 272, 961
 trade, 547–53, 600–1, 738–44, 747–77
 passim, 956
 Seleucid, 11–12; with China, 539
 through Nisibis, 131
 Indian-Byzantine, 157–8, 757
 Indian-Roman, 198, 756–7; through Characene, 312
 Seleucia-on-the-Tigris, trade centre, 482
 overland routes east, 509, 539, 741;
 Chinese attempts at control, 543, 546
 regular China-Parthia trade begins, 542
 China-Iran, 547–52
 return trade to China, 550 and n. 2, 551
 Parthian-Roman, 560; rivalry in Indian trade, 756
 Sasanian-Byzantine agreements, 571
 Persian Gulf, 593, 603–4, 751, 756
 co-partnership contracts, 671–2, 743
 “loans at risk”, 674–5
 Mesopotamian commercial cities, 715–21
 business documents, 716
 of the Parthian empire, 738–41; state organization, 722; avoidance of Parthian control, 768
 of the Sasanian empire, 741–4, 770–1;
 routes and commodities, 747–77 *passim*
 official markets, 762
 see also commodities, silk trade, etc.
 Trajan, soldier emperor, 86, 296, 309, 516, 517, 596
 Dacian war, 87
 campaign in Armenia, 88
 secures Armenia as a Roman province, 88
 receives the title Optimus Princeps, 88
 in Mesopotamia, 89, 313, 484, 490, 491
 Parthian war, 86–92, 912
 receives title Parthicus, 90
 death, 91
 conquers Adiabene, 496
 Transcaucasia, 126, 173, 241, 510, 516
 Transoxiana, 363, 449–50, 457, 787
 invasion of the Chionites, 211
 political history, 232–62
 the mint, 232–62 *passim*; Kushāno-Sasanian coins, 257
 and Greek power, 236–7, 239
 formation of stable community life, 250

INDEX

- Transoxiana (*cont.*)
 struggle against the Arabs, 256; conquest, 260, 1217
 revolt of al-Muqanna', 1003
 Muqanna'iyya in, 1004
 art, 1130–48
 geography, 1130
 languages, 1131
 K'ang-chü, 1135–6
- Travancore, Christian cross of, 1212
- Traxianē, 43
- Trebizond, 506
- Tree of Life, 533
- Trialeti goblet, 533
- tribes, 437, 462
 in Seleucid Iran, 13
 the Dahae nomad confederacy, 26–7
 Mardians guard the Caspian Gates, 31
 in westward migration, 36
 Arabs submit to Sasanians, 130
 first Hunnic peoples in the Middle East, 137
 of eastern Iran, 181
 in the invasion of eastern Iran, 191–201
passim; Huns, 211–16
 the Shibarghan burials, 193–4
 funeral rites, 195; cremation and inhumation, 212
 in Transoxiana, 242–3
 decay of Armenian tribal society, 509
 steppe life and art, 538–40; religion, 851–2
 Chang Ch'ien's mission, 540–2
 the Hsiung-nu confederacy, 540
 the Hsien-pi confederacy, 545–6
 Arab, 593–612 *passim*
 Jewish, in Arabia, 600–1
 Kinda confederation, 601–2
 Turkish, 613–16
 tribal structure in Palmyra and Edessa, 721
 of the Iranian empire, 747–77 *passim*
 K'ang-chü confederation, 1135
see also named tribes, nomadic activity
- Trojan war, 106
- Tryphon, 34–6
- Tsate, King of Lazica, 521
- tsaxtan, master, 200
- Tsikhis-dziri, *see* Petra
- Tsin dynasty,
 burning of Lo-yang by Hsiung-nu, 210
- ttaira haraysä/taéra-harä boraž, 1242
- ttasika-, 1241
- Tuan-Murun pass, 548
- Tübingen Theosophy, 833
- T'u-chüeh, *see* Turks
- Tughshāda, king of Bukhārā, 259
- Tugrān, 730
- Tuikhar, burial ground, 245
- Tūrya, *see* Turanians
- Tükaspādāk, king of Samarkandian Sughd, 256
- Tukharians, *see* Tochari
- Tukhāristān/Tokhāristān, 193, 258–9, 547, 1141, 1256
 Hepthalite princes in, 176, 757
 nomad migration to Punjab, 197
 viceroy of, 988
 name for Bactria, 1255
- Tumshuq/T'ien-shan nan-lu, Saka documents from, 269–70, 614, 963, 1232
 monastery complex, 963
- Tun-huang, 211, 268, 270, 274, 549, 616, 962
 on the Silk Route, 547
 rock-architecture, wall-paintings, 555–6, 954
 Sogdian “Ancient Letters”, 615, 1228
 texts, 1221
- Tup-khon, burial ground, 245
- tuppu, clay tablet, 495
- Tür/Tüch, son of Frēdōn, 372–3, 398, 409, 428, 430, 435, 440, 457
- Turaba, 606
- Türān, 140, 845
 king submits to Ardashir, 121
 identified with Qusdār, 121 n. 1
 in traditional history, 372, 403, 432, 435, 460
 and the Turks, 613
 Sasanian province/kingdom, 774, 775–6, 777
 visit of Māni, 858, 968
- Transoxiana, 1130
- Turanians/Tūrya, legendary enemies of the Iranians, 396, 409, 430
 Irano-Turanian wars, 355, 366–467
passim, 372–6, 440–43
 confused with the Turks, 409, 613
- Tureng Tepe, 1057
- Turfan/Turpannā/T'u-lu-fan, 36, 548, 554, 556, 962, 1109
 texts, 271, 836, 960, 1205; Rustam fragment, 457; Sogdian, 1217–18, 1221; Bactrian, 1256–8
 Chinese suzerainty, 546
 Uighur kingdom, 615–16, 862
 miniature paintings, 622
- Turkestan/An-hsi, 159, 268, 500, 738, 861, 1257
 Kanishka I eastern campaign, 208
- Saka Khotan in, 962

INDEX

- Turkestan (*cont.*)
 · Manichaeism in, 988
 Turkmenistan, 241, 248, 538
 Turks, 156, 158, 382 and n. 3, 410, 768,
 1241
 alliance with Sasanians, 156, 160
 relations with Persians, 159, 162–3
 give refuge to Bahrām Chōbīn, 165
 ruling over parts of China, 176
 middlemen between Sasanians and Far
 East, 176
 confusion with Turanians, 409, 613
 and the Chinese, 548 n. 1
 Irano-Turkish relations, 613–24 *passim*
 and the Hepthalites, 613–14; Sakas, 614–
 15; Sogdians, 615–16; non-Iranian
 peoples, 616
 empire of the steppes, 616; overthrown
 by the Uighurs, 616
 language and religion, 617–24
 imperial symbols, 623
 T’u-chüeh, 957–8
- Tüs/Tusa, legendary warrior, son of Naud-
 har, 376, 402, 413, 435, 452, 457
 without *xvarenah*, 345, 444, 460
 a Zoroastrian Immortal, 357
 and the sons of Vēsa, 443
 and Kai Khusrav, 460–1
- Tushita Heaven, 556
- tūtuk, clay, 495
- tuvānik*, full legal capacity, 643
- T’u-yü-hun people, 266
- ’twl*, fire, 331
- ’twršpt/’trwšpt*, “master of the fire”, priest,
 694, 868, 904
- ’twr ZY MLK*’, king’s fire-temple, 695–6
- Tyana, Cappadocian city, 110
 refounded as Eusebeia, 112
- Tyche, 873, 1080
- tylkpyšn/trkwy*, category of revenue, 694
 surplus from an endowment, 708
- Typhon, 427
- Tyre, 57
- trydyt mzn ’sppty*, commander-in chief of the
 cavalry, 745
- Ubulla/Apologos, 601, 755–6
- Uch-Turfan, 543
- Uddiyāna, 951, 957–8
- Üe-tsī, 1232
- Ufa, bowl, 1124 n. 2, 1126 n. 2
- Uighurs/Hui-hu/Toquz Oghuz, 268, 554,
 962
 empire of, 272, 616
 and Manichaeism, 273, 619–21, 862, 989,
 1229
- indirect Iranian influence on; religious,
 500, 617–21; linguistic, 617–24 *passim*
- Turfan kingdom of, 616, 862
- Kansu state of, 862
- Ujjain, 201, 952
- ‘Ukbāra/’Vuzurg-Shāpūr, 759
- Ukhaidır, 612
- Ukraine, 241
- ulfa*, union, 1023
- Ullais, battle of, 609
- Ulpan/ulfan, 309
- ‘Umān/Mazün, 487, 600, 730, 757
 mint, 213
 Persians in, 603–4, 609
- ‘Umar, caliph, 172, 487–8, 490
 subjugation of Iran, 524
- Umayyads, 334, 612, 861, 947
 and the Mazdakites, 1005, 1022
- Upanishads, 982
- upāsaka*, lay Buddhist, 950
- Ural region, 537
- Urartu, 494, 505–6, 507, 508, 512
- urban developments
 Greek in Seleucid Iran, 12
 Greek cities in Achaemenian Pontus, 111
 under the Sasanians, 131–2, 160, 723–7
 in Transoxiana, 244
 in Mesopotamia, 487–91; *polis* system
 under the Parthians, 715–22
 in Armenia, 509
 Seleucid *polis*-type cities, 713–14, 821–3
 in Asūristān/Babylonia, 758
 in Khwārazm, 1135, 1140
 in Sogdiana, 1145
- Urbnisi, Georgia, 534
- Urga, Mongolia, 549
- Urha, settlement on the later site of Edessa,
 715
- Urmaysde/Ohrmazd, Saka name for the
 chief god, 902
- Urta-boz, 248
- Uruk, 492, 494, 501, 502 n. 4, 844
- Urupa, 422
- Uruzgān, inscription, 1256
- urvaiti-*, “agreement”, 669
- urvar*, plants, 354
- Urvāxsaya, 429
- Usadhan/Usan, *see* Kai Kāvūs
- üśdar*, of Māni, 387 n. 1
- Uśedar bāmīg, 860
- Usha, consistory at, 918
- Ushrūsana, 240, 444
- usigs*, of the priestly class, 436
- utsarga*, ancient Indian endowment institu-
 tion, 664 n. 2
- ‘Uyān al-akhbār, *see* Ibn Qutaiba

INDEX

- Uzava, *see* Zāb
uzbar/uz-bāra/uzbari/wzbry, 495, 744, 1263
 Uzbekistan, 241, 245, 248–9
uzdīb, defined, 634
uzēnak i pat bun, 661
 ‘Uzzā, the Arabian Venus, 488
- vād*, ether, 350
 Vāčkārāta region (Gandhāra?), 430, 438
 Vaēsaka, *see* Vēsa
 Vahagn, Armenian god, 534
 Vahan (or Baanes), Armenian Byzantine commander, 524
 Vahištošahryār, Lord of Paradise, 860
 Vahman, 355, 417
 Vahman/Manvahmēd/Vohu Manah, the Good Mind, 859–60, 980
 Vahman Yasht, *see* Yashts
 Vahrām, yazad of Victory, 804
 Vahriz, commander of Khusrav, 158, 607
 Vahunam, nobleman usurper to Armenian throne, 129
 Vahunam, prime minister to Shāpūr I, 708, 736, 737
 Vaiśālī (Basrah), Buddhist council of, 949–50
Vajrasūci, Buddhist writing, 205
 Vajrayāna, 1234
 Vakhsh river, 236, 248, 257
 Vakhtang Gorgaslan, Georgian king, 148, 521
 Valagsh, son of Pāpak, 702
 Valens, Roman emperor, 138
 Valerian I, Roman emperor, 126, 322, 577, 754, 1101
 captured by Shāpūr I, 126, 485, 519; in the victory reliefs, 1083
 Valgash, brother of Kavād, 891
 Valgash/Balāsh, *see* Balāsh
 Valgash I/Vologeses I, *see* Vologeses I
 Vān
 lake, 505
 inscription of Xerxes, 506 n. 2
 Vandals, 152
 Vandarāmainī/Vandarīman, *see* Andarīmān
 Vāṇḍhi Dāityā/Veh Dāiti/Veh Rōd, river, 352, 440
var, ordeal, 679
 Var, Jamshed’s fortress, 357, 383, 424
 Varahrān I, *see* Bahrām I
 Varahrān I Kūshānshāh, 210
 Varahrān II Kūshānshāh, 210
 siege of Amida, 210
 Varakhsha, 960, 1089, 1228
 excavated, 1147
 Varāz, noble clan, 703, 705
- Varazdat, Armenian king, 531
 Varāzdukh, daughter of Queen Horanzem, 708
 Vardanes I, Arsacid king, successor to Artabanus III, 74–6, 81, 692
 battle with Gotarzes II, 76
 capitulation of Seleucia, 76, 720
 conflict with Rome over Armenia, 76–7
 death, 76
 coinage, 294, 308
 Vardanes II, son of Vologeses I, 295
 Vardapet, Elišē, 936, 938, 1275
 Varəna, 421 and n. 1, 427, 447 and n. 2
 Varəsava, of the house of Dāna, 430
 Varguntius, Roman commander, 55
 Varhrān, major Zoroastrian deity, 903
 the Fire, 876, 879
 Varhrān, *see* Bahrām
 Varkhūmān, king of Samarkandian Sughd, 256
Varṇārvavarṇastotra, 207
 Varnu, 447
Varṣhīmānsar/Varṣtīmansr Nask, *see* Dēnkard
 Varuna, 343–4, 412
 Vasāk, 417
 Vāśa’ Vāham, Khotan ruler, 269
 Vasfāfrid, daughter of Afrāsiyāb, 375
 Vāishka, Kushān king, 203
 Vasītiputra Śri Pulumāvi, 208
vāspubr, vāspubrakān, 658 and n. 1, 666, 669, 699, 702
 Vāspūhrakāns/Asparukans, noble family, 705
vāstryōśān/vāstryō-fṣuyant, social estate of cultivators, 632–3
vāstryōśānsālār, 633
 Vāsudeva I, ruler of the Kushān empire, 200, 248–9, 847, 850
 Vāsudeva II, ruler of the north western Kushān empire, 847
 Vasumitra, president of Third Buddhist Council, 204
vaxt, vaxī, increase, interest, 655
 Vāyū, 423, 425
 Vazamar, Chorasmian king, 255, 258
vazurg/vazrakān, heads of noble agnatic groups, 646
Vazurg Armenān Shāh, “Great King of Armenia”, 517
 Vedas, 349, 424, 427, 436
 Vedyāśila, of the Sāmāna monastery in Khotan, 1235
 Vēgard, 420
 vegetarianism, 966
 Veh Antiok Khusrav/Rūmagān/al-Rūmiyya, a town in the complex of Ctesiphon, 120, 155, 486, 725, 758

INDEX

- Veh Antioch Shāpūr/Beth Lapat, *see* Gundēshāpūr
 Veh-Ardashir/Bahurasir, a town in the complex of Ctesiphon, 120, 570, 725
 the Sasanian Seleucia, 724, 758
 Veh-Daiti river, 350, 352–3
veh-dēn, Zoroastrian, 1005
 Veh-Kavāt, 488
 Vehsadjan, Kushān king, 120
 Veh-Shāpūr, high priest, 629–30
 Veh-Shāpūr, *see* Bishāpūr
 Vehzāt i Frāv-Pērōz, 1181
Vendīdād/Vidēvdād, book of the Avesta, 346, 348, 350, 352, 365, 383, 424, 430, 447, 766, 829, 899, 1170, 1177, 1193
 and Kayanian geography, 438
 a Zurvanite Magi text, 977
 social doctrine in, 997
 on Mazdak, 1012
 dating, 1159
 glosses/commentaries, 1171–2
 Ventidius, Publius, Roman general, 57
 Venus, 534
veredus, courier's horse, 564
 Verethragna/Vərəthrəghna, 12, 325, 428, 532, 534, 557, 846, 886
 at Nimrūd Dāgh, 435
 Verus, Lucius, Roman general, 93, 297, 490
 Vēsa, house of, 452
 Vēsa, brother of Afrāsiyāb, 373
 Vēsa/Vaēsaka, uncle of Afrāsiyāb, 413–14, 460; his sons, 443
vēšak, to designate slave, 635
 Vespasian, Roman emperor
 commander in Judea, 87
 in Asia Minor, 113–14
Vicāriyā i čatrang, 1185
 Victor, bishop of Rome, 928
Vidēvdād, *see Vendīdād*
 Vietnam, 552
 Vihāras, 1232
 Vijaya Kirti, Khotan king, 958
 Vijīda-simha/Bijaya Sinha, king of Khotan, 265
 Vijita Sambhava, king of Khotan, 1240
 Vikrama era, 196
 Vima Kadphises, Kushān ruler, son of Kujula Kadphises, 198, 850
 chronology, 200, 248
 Vima Kadphises II, 848
 Vimalakirti, 1236
vindiśn, increase, interest, 655
 Viśa Dharmā, Khotan ruler, legend of, 1238–9
 Viśa'Kirtta, Khotan ruler, 269
 Viśa'Sūra, Khotan ruler, 269
Viśtāsp Sāt, 467
 Viśpauzāti, 24
Vispe Ratavō/jašt i Visperad, Sasanian high festival service, 795
 Viśtāspa, father of Darius, 24, 26, 828
 Viśtāspa, *see* Gushtāsp
 Vistauru (Gustahm?), 413, 415, 460
Vis u Rāmin, of Gurgāni, 527, 799, 1158–9, 1168, 1267
 Viśvantara, 959
 Viśvarūpa, 427–8
 Viśya Vikram, Khotan ruler, 269
vitaxa/pitiakhsh, as title of the Mtskheta viceroy, 515
see also *pitiakhsh*
 Vitellius, Roman governor of Syria, 73
 peace with Artabanus, 74
 Vivanghan, 371
 Vivanhvant, 423
 Vivasant, father of Manu, 433
Vizidagīhā i Zadspāram, 364
vlg'j/Vologases, lord of Hatra, 596
 Vohūdāt i Ātur-Ohrmazdān, 1181
 Vohu Manah, 346, 836, 843, 860
 Vohuman Yasht, *see* Yashts
 Volandum, Armenian stronghold, 82
 Volga river, also Rajha, 352
 Vologaskart, 719, 722, 739
 Vologeses/Valgash/Balash I, Arsacid king, son of Vonones, 79, 81–3, 447
 invades Armenia, 79
 Roman–Parthian conflict over Armenia, 79–86
 reduces Hellenistic influence in favour of Magians, 86
 coinage, 86, 295, 1153
 establishes Vologesocerta, 758
 Vologeses II, 94, 692
 struggle with Osroes, 87–8
 coinage, 88, 295–6
 Vologeses III, 93, 490
 coinage, 296–7, 1153
 stone plaque, 1153
 Vologeses IV, 93, 117–18, 484
 palace destroyed by the Romans, 93
 defeat of Pāpak, 118
 coinage, 297
 Vologeses V, 94
 coinage, 297
 Vologeses VI, 94
 coinage, 94, 96, 297
 Vologesias/Vologesocerta / Valāshābād / Sābat, new city on the Royal Canal, 86, 492 and n. 8, 758

INDEX

- Vonones I, Arsacid king, son of Phraates IV, 67–9, 79, 692
 coinage, 41 and n. 2, 68, 293
 death, 69
- Vonones II, 295, 692
- Vonones, saka ruler, 194
- Vourukaša/Varkash/Frākh(w)kard, mythical sea, 345–6, 351–2
- Vramshapuh, Arsacid king of Armenia, 144
- Vṛtra, 428, 444, 853
- Vuzurgmihr/Buzurgmihr, counsellor of Khusrau I, 382, 399, 710, 713, 801, 1185
 “Memorial” of, 1181, 1185
- vuzurk-framatār/buzurg farmadār, late Sasanian title for the prime minister, 475, 588–9, 735
 great commander, 148
see also framatār
- Waqā'i*, 599
- Wadi Thartar, 91
- Wais, dam at, 753
- Wakhān, 958, 1231
- wall-paintings, 77, 104–5, 555, 557, 612, 954, 962, 1044, 1046
- Mirān, 209, 959, 1138
- Panjikent, 450 and n. 2, 457, 613, 1089, 1115, 1145–6
- Samarkand, 613
- Dura-Europos, 1052
 surviving Iranian evidence, 1088–9
- Sogdian, 1089, 1131, 1144–8 *passim*
- Khwarazmian, 1136–8
- walnut, 565
- Wan Fo Hsia, cave shrines, 954
- waqf*, Iranian origin of, 664
waqf khairi, 664
waqf abli, 665
- wāqif*, founder of an endowment, 664
- Wardak, 953, 956
- Warka, *see* Uruk
- Warrāq, 1006–7
- wasi*, legatee, 1016
- wastryōshbadh*, last Sasanian title of “chief of the cultivators”, 738
- wēlk'n/RB'n*, grandees, 699–700, 703–7
see also vazurg
- wī'lpī*, 711
 “Wedding Song of Sophia”, 840
 “wedding of the ten thousand”, 482
- Wei-Ch'i-h I-seng, artist, 558
- Wei History, 552
- Wei State, of divided China, 546, 552–3, 555–6
 “Northern Wei”, 546, 616
- Emperor Hūi, 1020
- White Dēv, 349, 374
- White Forest, 452
- widows, 648–50 *passim*, 653, 666, 668
- wihēzāg* (leaping) year, *see* time-reckoning
- wills, 630, 653, 655
 of the King of Kings, 690
- “wisdom” literature/*andarz*, *see* literature
- witchcraft, 679
- w̄psyk*, religious tax, 904
 and emphyteutic leases, 659, 663
- w̄slwš'n sl̄d'l*, “chief of the cultivators”, 736
- w̄spwīl'k'n 'ndrz pt*, priests, 690
- Wu-se-to-hsi (Vištāspa?), 557
- Wu-sun and tribe, 36, 192, 242, 543, 548
 tribal hostilities within China, 192
- Chang Ch'ien mission to, 541
 safe passage to merchants, 542
- Wu Ti, Han emperor of China, 548
 intervention in Central Asia, 540; Chang Ch'ien mission, 540–2; against the Tāyuan, 542–3
- Xanthii, 27
- Xanthus, 104
 Tomb of the Harpy, 111
- Xenophon, 490, 506
 and his Ten Thousand, 506
- Xerxes, Achaemenian king, 89, 102, 460, 498, 593
 and Eastern Iranian army, 181
 Grand Army, 181
 inscriptions at Vān and Persepolis H, 506 n. 2
 tomb at Naqsh-i Rustam, 1081
- Xerxes, Armenian king, 510–12
- Xnathaitī, 430
- xōd*, high hat, 913
- xritakib*; *pat vahāk dāt/froxt*, contract, 672
- xšabratā-pāna/xšatrap*, satrap, 495
see also satrapies
- Xšathra Vairyā, 346
- xšāyaθiya vazraka*, the Persian title “great king”, 494 n. 2
- xšāyaθiya xšāyaθiyānām*, Persian title “king of kings”, 494 n. 2
- Xuāstvāni*, confession formulas, 985
- Xumdān/Humādām, 274–5
- xvāētav-*, near agnate, 644
xvāētavāθa, near agnate marriage, 644
- xvāētavāθa/khwēdōdab*, close-kin marriage, *see* marriage
- Xvaniratha/Khwanirah, 350–2
- xvarənah/xwarrab/farrab/farr*, Divine Fortune, 325, 345–6, 368, 371–2, 374, 414–66 *passim*, 846, 903
- Kavaem, 345

INDEX

- xvarənah* (*cont.*)
Aiyānām, 345
 in form of a ram, 380, 886
 national, 408
Bātīni jaddas, 1016
 and Zoroaster, 1173
see also kingship
xvāstak, saleable articles
 in relation to a slave, 636
 in property law, 655
xvāstakdār, heir, 652
xvāstakdārīh, family ownership, 658 and n. 1
Xvatāy-nāmak, Sasanian chronicle, 627 n. 2
xvēš, *xvēšib i xvēš*, 659
xvēšāvandān, 644
xvēšib, legal use of, 639, 656
Xvēškārib-nāmak i kār-framānān, 630
Xvēškārib-nāmak i magupatān, 630
Xvētōdas, 1178, 1186
Xwadāy-nāmag, *see* *Khwadāy-nāmag*
Xwastwāñist, Manichaean text, 621
Xyōns, 1158 n. 1
- Yaghnāb river, 1217
Yahballāhā, Catholicos, 940
 synod, 932
yahūd, Jew, 907
 Yama
 Yama-Yima, 419, 424–5
 Yama-Yamī, 421
 Yamāna, 600, 603
 Yamanat, 603
 Yangchou, foreign emporium on the Grand Canal at, 553
 Yang-shao neolithic culture of central China, 537
 Yang-tzū river, 275
Ya'qūbī, historian, 361, 1280
 Yārkand, 543, 546, 548
 river, 269
 Yarmuk, river, battle on, 524
 Yarqoto, west of Turfan, 272
 Yashts
 Abān Yasht, 344, 413, 441, 460, 465
 Farvardin Yasht, 344, 409, 414, 416, 433, 435, 436, 437, 442, 448, 451, 465, 467, 469
 Zamyād Yasht, 345, 356, 414, 415, 431, 433, 440, 441, 443, 452, 465; Kayanian kings, 437
 Mithra Yasht, 351
 Rashn Yasht, 352
 Vahman/Vohuman Yasht, 356, 364, 835, 1174
 Zand i Vahman/Vohuman Yasht, 356, 364, 387–470, 1160, 1171, 1195
 as source for pre-Zoroastrian myth and legend, 413
 portrayal of Kayanian society, 462–4
 Vishtāsp Yasht, 466, 469
yasna, sacrifice before the fire, 798, 904
Yasna, Avestan liturgical text, 1170, 1172
 Yasodharman, King, 1185
yātakgōb, representative, 676
 Yathrib, the later Medina, 600
Yātkār-i Vazurgmibr, 710
yātū, demon, sorcerer, 349, 536
yātūkīh, witchcraft, 679
Yaviši i frysjan, 1179
 Yavneh, 917
yazata/yazad/izad, divine beings, 348, 354–6, 973
 Yāzdab Rukh, battle of “Eleven Aspects”, 458
 Yazdāndād of Sistān, 456
 Yazdgard/Yazdgird I, Sasanian king, 134, 143, 585, 737
 persecution of Zoroastrian priests, 143–4
 coinage, 325–6, 329–30
 “The Sinner”, in traditional history, 379, 381, 395, 398, 399
 and Christianity in Mesopotamia, 485
 Jewish wife, 144, 499
 medieva claim of Christian conversion, 568
 guardian of the young Theodosius II, 578–9
 and religion, 889–90, 939–40
 and his Jewish subjects, 915
 Yazdgard II, 146, 630, 640, 768, 1225
 tries to convert Armenia to Zoroastrianism, 146, 890, 942; and Georgia, 521
 coinage, 330
 persecution of Christians, 585, 890
 and the Jews, 915–16
 Yazdgard III, grandson of Khusrau II, 171, 359, 362, 379, 395, 474, 897
 defeat by the Arabs, 172, 486
 requests Chinese aid, 172, 175
 death and end of Sasanian empire, 172, 174, 947
 rewards Juanšēr, 1104
 Yazd-gushnasp, representative of Khusrau I, 574
 Yazidis, devil-worshippers, 501
 Yellow River, 537
 Yemen, 374–5 n. 4, 445–7, 600
 occupied by Ethiopia, 604–7
 fate of its Persian colony, 607
 Yen-tsai, 242–3
yhwdy, Jew, 907

INDEX

- Yima, *see* Jamshēd
 Yīsō'boxt, the Law-Book of, 631, 640, 673–
 5, 740–1, 1277
 'y'l'n 'nbl/kpty, "chief store keeper of Iran",
 736
Yogācārabhūmi, 207
 Yōišta/Yōsht/Jōsht, 413
 Yonas, of north-west India, 951
 Yotqan, 263, 962
 'yr' nf'h̄r, Iran, 731
ysamāśandai, derivation of the term, 1242
 Yü-ch'ih/Viśa/Bīza, 267
 Yüeh-chih, Chinese tribe of Kansu province,
 36, 851–2, 952, 958–9
 tribal hostilities within China, 192, 243
 conquest of Bactria, 192
 migration into Transoxiana, 242, 247
 imitations of Euthydemid coins in
 Transoxiana, 246
 dominant political power in Transoxiana,
 247
 Ta Yüeh-chih in Sogdiana, 540
 Chang Ch'i'en mission and, 540 and n. 2,
 541 and n. 1
 Yü-lin, 266
 Yün Chou, 274
 Yün-kang in Shansi, 556, 623, 954
 Yüsuf Dhū Nuwās, 157, 605
 Yüsuf Qadir Khān, Muslim ruler, 268
 Yutiya/Outii, tribe, 772
yuvāraja, prince, 195
 'yza, temples, 867
- Zāb/Uzava, legendary king, 374, 383, 404–5,
 415, 432, 440, 460
 proclaimed king, 373
 as successor of Manūchihr, 435–6
 adoption of Kavād, 444
 Zāb (Greater and Lesser), river, 88–9
 upper and lower, 496
 Zābul/Zābulistān, province of eastern Iran,
 214, 377, 432, 455, 771, 775, 958
 Zaden, Georgian god, 534
 Zadespras, general of Bahram Chōbin, 165
 Zagros mountains, 481, 498
 tribes, 766
zābir, outward meaning, 1016
 Zain al-akbbār, *see* Gardizi
 Zainigav, 356, 440
 Zairivairi, *see* Zarēr
 Zakkō, disciple of Māni, 968
 Zāl, legendary king of Sīstān, 367, 431, 432,
 435, 454, 464
 origins of legend of, 346, 454–5
 and the Simurgh, 346, 373, 389
 youth, 373
- Rustam born, 374
 killed by Bahman, 377, 396
 education of, 407
 also called Dastān, 432, 453
 Zamān i akānārak, "the infinite Time", 975
 n. 2
 Zamaris, Babylonian Jewish nobleman,
 911
 Zāmāsp/Jāmāsp, Sasanian king, brother of
 Kavād, 150, 330–1, 945
 Zambasta, Khotanese official, 964
 Book of, 1231–7 *passim*
 Zamyād Yasht, *see* Yashts
 zamzama, 1225
 zand, 364
 derivation of meaning, 907
 Avestan *zands*, 1160, 1170
 Zand-āgāhib, *see* Bundahishn
 Zand i fragart i Vidēvāt, 1177
 zandikīh, heresy, 679, 907,
 Zandiks, Mazdean heretics, 882, 988–9
 zandik, deviant believer, 907, 997, 1019
 see also zindiqs
 Zand i Vahman/Vohuman Yasht, *see* Yashts
 Zanj, 606
 Zarafshān river, 238, 240, 245, 257–8
 identified with Rājha, 352
 Zarang, Zrang, *see* Drangiana
 Zarathuštra/Zartušt, *see* Zoroaster
 Zardusht/Zarādušt Kurragān, originator
 of Mazdakism, 995–6, 998, 1013, 1018–
 19
 Zarer, pretender to Sasanian throne, 149
 Zarēr, brother of Gushtāsp, 376, 415, 468,
 471, 1157, 1161
 Zairivairi/Zarēr, 413
 "Zarēr, Memorial of", 1173
 Zargveshi, 1115 and n. 1
 Zariadres, 389, 460, 467–8, 1161
 Zariadrīs/Zareh, strategos of Sophene, 512,
 514
 Zariaspa, Bactria, 241
 Zarmihr/Sokhra, minister of Kavād, 150
 Zātsprām, theologian, 900, 1194
 "Selections", 364, 975–7, 1174, 1190–1,
 1193
 Zeionises/Jihunik, satrap of Vima Kad-
 phises, 249
 Zela, sanctuary of Anaitis and other Persian
 gods, 109, 873–4
 Zenda-i Suleiman site, 63 n. 2
 Zeno, Byzantine emperor, 573
 Zenobia, wife of Rhadamistus, 80, 312
 Zenobia, state of, 715
 Zephyrinus, bishop of Antioch, 926
 Zeugma/Birecik, 77, 740

INDEX

- Zeus, 427, 825
 Zeus/Mithra/Ahuramazda, conflation by
 Antiochus I of Commagene, 113, 842
 on coins, 187, 240, 244, 252, 257, 282, 308,
 310, 847, 848
 equivalent of Armenian Aramazzd, 534
 at Nimrûd Dâgh, 535
 temple of Zeus Kyrios, 716
 and the elephant from Mount Pilusara,
 847
 temple of Zeus Megistos, 1154
 Zevakh, viceroy of Iberia, 515
 Zevakh the younger, 515
 “Zhāmāsp, Book of”, 896
 zindigs, heretics, 907, 1005, 1010, 1015
 followers of Māni, 988–9
 followers of Mazdak, 600, 997, 1004
 Kavād as, 1021 n. 4
 see also Zandiks
 zir, highest note on a stringed instrument,
 502
 Ziwiye, treasury of, 1101 n. 5
 -zmi/zamin, 1244
 zodiac, 384–6
 and Mithraism, 854
 and Mazdean thought, 900
 and the Manichaean Virgins, 978
 Zofar, 605
 Zoroaster/Zarathuštra/Zartušt, 376, 394,
 415–37 *passim*, 463, 470, 502, 899
 and beliefs about daēvas, 347
 new perspective given to creation myths,
 350, 353
 his advent in myth, 355, 385
 his future sons Messiahs, 355, 386
 traditional dating, 387, 412 n. 4; scholarly,
 412
 and social class, 397
 the Gāthās, 412
 and Arādvī Sūrā, 413
 in the Farvardin Yasht, 414
 and Gushtāsp, 466–7
 Zwpáōt̄pns and astrology, 502
 alleged author of occult books, 567
 and calendar reform, 786, 811
 annual observance of death, 810
 Zoroastres, Zaratas, 828
 as predecessor of Māni, 983–4
 Dēnkard legend of, 1172–5
 in Zātspram, 1191
 Zoroastrianism, 7, 17, 97, 117, 128, 131–2,
 324, 360–66 *passim*, 391, 482, 521, 557,
 583, 585, 591, 630, 827–9, 834, 845–6,
 1199
 priests and the Sasanian succession, 133–4
 power of the chief priest, 134
 ruler as upholder, 134; in traditional
 history, 405
 church organisation, 140
 conflict with Christians, 144–5
 attempt to convert Armenia, 146; revolt,
 147; peace, 149
 priests against Zurvānism, 149
 and Mazdak, 150
 in Armenia, 159, 519, 521, 890
 agriculture a duty, 161
 under Khusrau II, 172
 stultification, 174
 temple in Ch'ang-an, 176; Qočo, 272
 and the Kushāns, 204
 against cremation, 212
 fire-altar on coins, 323
 and Iranian common beliefs, 343–58
 passim
 Pahlavi literature, 364–5, 1166–95; ritual
 in 1176–9
 concept of history, 367–9; religious aspect
 of traditional history, 393–7
 legitimising kingship, 368
 conversion of Gushtāsp, 376
 killing of priests, 377
 and chronology, 383–7 *passim*, 1173–4
 lore and legend, 412–73 *passim*
 animal sacrifice, 423
 religious policy of Cyrus, 439
 myrtle-blossom, 498
 in Georgia, 534
 in China, 554
 Mazdaism, state religion, 585, 633–4, 893
 in Arabia, 603, 609, 757
 majūs/Zoroastrians, 609, 611, 1009, 1015
 and the Sogdians, 615
 in Uighur Buddhism, 619
 and citizenship, 634
 and slavery, 635, 638–9, 672
 sacred slaves/hierodouloi, 640–1
 the ātarvaxī, 641
 church property, 660–1
 and royal authority, 683–98 *passim*
 ancestor cult, 696
 its “holy land”, 698
 priests at the Sasanian court, 713
 and time-reckoning, 778–91 *passim*, 805–
 11 *passim*
 festivals, 792–815
 priests' mace, 802
 and the origins of gnosis, 836–40 *passim*
 and sun-worship in India, 851
 and Mithraism, 853–6 *passim*
 and Manichaeism, 856–60 *passim*, 972–84
 passim; ideas compared, 858–60
 and Zurvanism, 858–60, 938–9

INDEX

- Zoroastrianism (*cont.*)
 Zoroastrian religion, 866–906; under the Seleucids and Arsacids, 866–74; under the Sasanians, 874–97; orthodoxy and heresy, 897–902; major deities, 902–4; fires and priests, 904–6
 official recognition, 867
 rites, 872
 influence of Kartir, 878–885
 converted Mazdeans influence Christian separation, 890
 church definitively established, 893
 and Christians, 933–48 *passim*
 close-kin marriage, 938
 confession formulas, 985
 and Mazdakism, 991, 995–1000 *passim*, 1007, 1018–21 *passim*
 and the Bātinis, 1015
 Parthian literature, 1159–60
 and the Pārsis, 1169
 the Mean in, 1180
 regional churches, 1199
see also Ahunavairyō prayer, fire, fire temples
 zrvān akarana , and the Magians, 830
 zrw' , $\text{zrw}'/\text{zrvan}'$, Zurvān, 938
- ' $\chi'm$, the free, nobles, 699–700
see also āzātān
 ' $\z'ty GBR'$, defined, 699
 Zūn, idol of, 755
 Zurad/ $\zwl'd\zyn$, province, 706
 $\zurnā/\sūrnā$, oboe, 502 and n. 5
 Zurvandāt, son of Mihr-Narseh, 633, 891
 Zurvāndukht, daughter of Shāpūr II, 140 n. 2
 Zurvānism, 140 and n. 2, 149, 609, 621, 843, 855, 887, 896
 Zurvān, 840, 843, 859, 886, 896, 899–900, 938, 956, 973–4 and n. 3, 976, 1199
 and Manichaeism, 857, 864, 938, 973–84 *passim*, 985–6
 and Zoroastrianism, 858–60, 938–9; in the *Bundahishn*, 1193
 and Mihr-Narseh, 891, 941
 condemned in the *Dēnkard*, 898–9
 reflected in Mazdean orthodoxy, 899–902
 “Zutt” Indian tribes, 754–5, 776
 Zvarnotz cathedral, Armenia, 533 fig. 2
 $\z ynd'nyk$, head of palace security and prison, 711
 $\z ynp'i$, head of the royal arsenal, 711

INDEX OF GREEK WORDS

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| ἀγορανόμος, 711, 728, 919 | καπίθη, 503 |
| ἀγχιστεία, 644 | κατοικία, 822 |
| ἀδάμας, 623 | κίταρις, 525 |
| ἀνώνη, 711 | κυνήγιον, 711 |
| ἀρκαπάτης, 713 | κύριος δεσπότης, 705 |
| ἀρχιγραμματεύς, 736 | |
| ἀστήρ/ἀστρον, 502 | λιμήν, 716 |
| αὐλάνας, 1268 | |
| αὐτόκτητα, 659, 665 | μαγεία, 827 |
| βασίλειον, 9 π. 6 | μάγοι/μαγουσαῖοι, 501, 708, 827 |
| βασιλεύς, 482, 494 π. 2, 578, 683–99 | μάρτυς, 937 |
| βάτησα, 736 | μεγιστᾶνες, 700 |
| γαζοφυλάκιον, 43 | μνεία, 708 |
| γένος, 642, 721 | |
| δαιμων, 695 | νέα τύχη, 843 |
| δάνεισμα, ναυτικὸν, 674 | |
| δειπνοκλήτωρ, 710 | οἶνος, 711 |
| δεκάπρωτοι, 741 | οδολογητής, 937 |
| δημόσια, 745 | |
| διάδημα, 620 | παιδῶν, 1269 |
| δικαστής, 736 | πάτρα, 642 |
| δουλικᾶς χρείας, 674 | πασατας, 708 |
| ἔθνη, 725 | πατρῷα, παππῷα, 665 |
| ἐκκλησία, 719 | πελάται, 700 |
| ἐκφόριον, 744 | πεπιστεύμενος, 41 |
| ἔλευθεροι, 632 | περίχωρος, 725 |
| ἐπίκτητα, 659, 665 | πῖλος, 525 |
| ἐπιστάται, 714, 717 | πόλις, see p. 1459 |
| ἐπιστολῶν, 704 | πολίτευμα, 714, 822 |
| ἐπίτροπος, 711, 736–7 | ποντικόν, 566 |
| ἐρημία, 652 | πρεκόκκινον, 565 |
| εὑρωπαῖοι, 717 | προσκύνησις, 824 |
| θέμα, 587 | πρόφασιν, 940 |
| θεοπάτωρ, 685 | πυρεῖον, 941 |
| θεός, 525, 685, 695 | |
| θεότοκος, 943 | ῥᾶ, ῥῆον, 565 |
| θεραπεία, 827 | |
| θυγατριδοῦς, 653 | σεβόμενοι, 947 |
| ἱερόδουλοι, 109–10, 640–1 | σοφοὶ, 708 |
| καθάριοι, 965 π. 6 | στατήρ, 503, 624 |
| κάλαμος, 622 | στέμμα, 1080 |

INDEX OF GREEK WORDS

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| συνοδιάρχης, 740 | φύλοι, 689, 702, 709 |
| συνοικισμός, 489 | φοβούμενοι, 947 |
| συντήρησις ὀνόματος, 708 | φόρος, 714, 745 |
| σῶμα, 635 | φῦλα, 709, 716 |
| ταμίας, 718 | φυλακή, 711 |
| τάξις τῶν λαῶν, 1268 | φύλαρχος, 709 |
| νῆλη, 973–9 | φυλή, 721 |
| ὑπηρεσία, 710 | φυσικοί, 830 |
| φιάλη, 193 | χρείας, δουλικᾶς, 674 |
| | χρυσάργυρον, 745 |
| | χώρα, χωρίον, 721, 732 |